Key to Junior English for Tibetan Students

English-Tibetan Dictionary
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface མིང་ནི། &lt;6&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contributors འཕགས་ལུས། &lt;7&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of People གླིང་བོད། &lt;8&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of Places གླིང་བོད། &lt;9&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibetan Translation of Grammar Terms འབྲེས་དབང་འབོད་ལམ་ཡུལ། &lt;10&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students’ Book 1A གྲོན་དབང་པོ། &lt;11&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1 Hello! What’s your name? འབྲུ་བུ་ཐལ་འབྲུ། ཏོགས་དཔོན། &lt;12&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2 Nice to meet you! འབྲུ་བུ་ཐལ་འབྲུ། འཕགས་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;14&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 3 Can you spell it? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;16&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 4 Numbers in English འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;18&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 5 What’s this in English? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;22&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 6 How old is he? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;25&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 7 Is this your pencil-box? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;28&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 8 Mainly revision འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;32&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 9 The new students འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;34&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 10 Where is it? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;37&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 11 Come and meet the family! འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;39&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 12 What can you see? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;42&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 13 What colour is it? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;44&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 14 That’s mine འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད། &lt;46&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 15 What’s the time? འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད། &lt;48&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 16 Mainly revision འབྲུ་བུ་བུག་པོ་ནད་བོད། &lt;49&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students' Book 2A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Students’ Book 2B <100>

Unit 15 Thanks for the message <101>
Unit 16 The seasons of the year <103>
Unit 17 What’s the weather like today? <105>
Unit 18 Come to the party! <107>
Unit 19 A weather report <110>
Unit 20 What do English people eat? <113>
Unit 21 Mainly revision <115>
Unit 22 What a good, kind girl <117>
Unit 23 You mustn’t play on the road <119>
Unit 24 What do you have to do? <121>
Unit 25 The visit to Monkey Island <123>
Unit 26 A good doctor <125>
Unit 27 Ling Feng’s diary <127>
Unit 28 Mainly revision <129>

Students’ Book 3 <131>

Unit 1 Teacher’s Day <132>
Unit 2 The sports meeting <136>
Unit 3 A good teacher <139>
Unit 4 What were they doing? <142>
Unit 5 The accident <144>
Unit 6 In the library <146>
Unit 7 Mainly revision <148>
Unit 8 On the farm <149>
Unit 9 A visit to a factory <151>
Unit 10 Mr. Green’s problem ཇིར་ཤིང་ཚགས། དུས་བཟབ་ཞི་ཞི་འཛིན་པ་རིན། <153>

Unit 11 A great inventor ཇིར་ལྟར་ཤིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། གིས་ཏེ། <155>

Unit 12 Have a good time, Jim ཇིར་ཤིང་ཚགས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <157>

Unit 13 Happy New Year ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <159>

Unit 14 Mainly revision ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <162>

Unit 15 At home with the twins ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <163>

Unit 16 What’s it made of? ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <166>

Unit 17 What was it used for? ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <169>

Unit 18 Planting trees ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <171>

Unit 19 Mainly revision ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <174>

Unit 20 The world’s population ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <176>

Unit 21 Shopping ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <179>

Unit 22 At the doctor’s ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ། <181>

Unit 23 The football match ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ་བོད་པ་བོད་པ། <184>

Unit 24 Mainly revision ཇིར་ལྟར་ཞིག་གིས། རྣམ་གུང་འབབ་བོད་པ་བོད་པ། <186>

English-Tibetan Dictionary རྫོ་ནུང་བོད་པ་བོད་པ། <189>
This book is an aid to Tibetan students who are learning English using the *Junior English for China* textbooks. It was prepared by seven students and a teacher in the English Training Program in the Nationalities Department of Qinghai Normal University.

The book is divided into sections that correspond to the current *Junior English for China* textbooks. Each unit in *Junior English for China* is given here with subsections on useful expressions, grammar, and text explanation.
Contributors

Editors

Tshe dbang rdo rje
‘Gyur med rgya mtsho
Blo brtan
‘Bum phrug
Dbang phyug rgyal
‘Brug mo skyid
Rig grol

...
### Names of People

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names of People</th>
<th>Han names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ann अन्र</td>
<td>Gunchu गुंचु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caihua चाइहाउ</td>
<td>Han Meimei हाण मेईमी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairang चाईरांग</td>
<td>Hangdi हाङ्डिदी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cizhon चिझन</td>
<td>Hangmu हाङ्मु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumu झुमु</td>
<td>Huamo हुआमो</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Danba न्दन्बा</td>
<td>Mr Hu हुआमु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danden ढांडन</td>
<td>Huadan हुआदन</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danzen ढांजन</td>
<td>Hui Fang हैफॉंग</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawa दावा</td>
<td>Jantsuo जांत्सुअ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debi देबी</td>
<td>Jim जिम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dodben झुडबे</td>
<td>Kanzhu खांज्ञू</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doma झौमा</td>
<td>Kate केट</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dondrup झुंड्रुप</td>
<td>Lakers Team लेखर्स टीम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorji झोर्जी</td>
<td>Lhaben ल्हाबन</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorri झुर्री</td>
<td>Lhamo ल्हामो</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drongker झुर्ङ्कर</td>
<td>Lhomotso ल्होमोत्सो</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drukar झुकार</td>
<td>Lily लिली</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duden झुदन</td>
<td>Lin Tao लिन टाओ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dulu झुलु</td>
<td>Ling Feng लिंग फेंग</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunba ढुन्बा</td>
<td>Lodan लोदान</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gangcu ढाङ्गकु</td>
<td>Losang लोसाङ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gansang ढाङ्साङ</td>
<td>Lucy लूसी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gensang ढाङ्साङ</td>
<td>Meduk झेमुक</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gesar झे सर</td>
<td>Nima निमा</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Green झार्गरेन</td>
<td>Norbu नोर्बु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs. Green झार्गरेन</td>
<td>Nyingkar झिंग्कार</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of Places</td>
<td>Names of Places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amdo ་དམོད།</td>
<td>Mahdo County རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America ༢ངོས་པོ།</td>
<td>Malho Prefecture རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia འוס్ٹ్రི་ଇଲେଶ୍ଯା</td>
<td>Malho Normal School རྟོགས་རྫོང་། འཛིན་པོ་སྟེ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ayers Rock འྲེ་ཡི་ཐོར།</td>
<td>Maqin Mountain རྟོགས་རྫོང་། སྤྱད་སྐྱོང།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beijing བཊི་ནྭ་།</td>
<td>Moscow རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain ྦྲིའི་ིེ།</td>
<td>Nationalities Press རྟོགས་རྫོང་། ལས་ཁྲོགས་པ་སྐྱེལ་བ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burma བོད་ཁྲིམས་།</td>
<td>Nepal འབྲུག་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada ྦྱངས་།</td>
<td>People’s Park རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྒྱལ་པོ་གནས་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Asia འབྲུག་བཞུགས་།</td>
<td>Qinghai རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamdo རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Qinghai Hotel རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chengdu རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Qinghai Lake རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuzhou རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Qinghai Nationalities Institute རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་། ལས་ཁྲོགས་པ་སྐྱེལ་བ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dujia Village རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Rebgong རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England ྦྲིའི་ིེ།</td>
<td>Shanghai རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gangcha County རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Sichuan རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Tibet རྟོགས་རྫོང་། སྦྱོང་ཁུམ་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hor རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>USA རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huangzhong རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Xi’an རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Xiaqong Monastery རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiantsa Nationalities Middle School རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Xunhua རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumbum Monastery རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Yak Hotel རྟོགས་རྫོང་། རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lhabrang རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Yellow River རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lhasa City རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
<td>Ziling རྟོགས་རྫོང་།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tibetan Translation of Grammar Terms

Active voice and passive voice  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Adjective  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Answer form  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Articles  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Comparison of adverbs  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Countable nouns  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Full forms  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Future  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Future in the future  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Future simple  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Imperatives  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Infinitive verbs  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Nominative and possessive cases  རྣམ་གྱི་དབང་དཔེ་བོན་
Noun  རྣམ་གྱི་
Object  རྣམ་གྱི་
Past  རྣམ་གྱི་
Past continuous  རྣམ་གྱི་
Past perfect tense  རྣམ་གྱི་
Past simple  རྣམ་གྱི་
Plural forms  རྣམ་གྱི་
Possessive pronouns  རྣམ་གྱི་
Possessives  རྣམ་གྱི་
Present  རྣམ་གྱི་
Present continuous tense  རྣམ་གྱི་
Present indefinite tense  རྣམ་གྱི་
Present perfect tense  རྣམ་གྱི་
Present simple  རྣམ་གྱི་
Pronoun  རྣམ་གྱི་
Question form  རྣམ་གྱི་
Short forms  རྣམ་གྱི་
Singular forms  རྣམ་གྱི་
Statement form  རྣམ་གྱི་
Subject  རྣམ་གྱི་
The present indefinite tense  རྣམ་གྱི
Time Expression  རྣམ་གྱི་
Students’ Book 1A

Students’ Book 1A
Unit 1 Hello! What’s your name?

Useful Expressions

1 Good morning, Teacher. Good morning, students.
2 What’s your name? My name is...
3 How are you? Fine, thank you. And you? I’m fine, too.
4 Where are you from? I’m from Lhabrang.
5 When did you come? I came yesterday afternoon.

Text Explanation

1 What is your name? My name is... (Dündüülphüdröa...biäng)
   1a What is his name? His name is...
   1b What is her name? Her name is...
   1c What is my name? Your name is...
   1d What is your father’s name? My father’s name is... / His name is...
   1e What’s your brother’s name? My brother’s name is ...

2 Nice to meet you! = How nice to meet (see) you.

3 Nice to meet you too! (Dündüülphüdröa “Nice to meet you!”Dündüülphüdröa “Weihua!”Dündüülphüdröa “Weihua!”

3a A: Nice to meet you! (Dündüülphüdröa)

   B: Nice to meet you too! (Dündüülphüdröa)

4 This is Weihua. He is Weihua.

5 A: Good morning, Class! (Dündüülphüdröa)

   B: Good morning, Teacher! (Dündüülphüdröa)

   A: Sit down, please. (Dündüülphüdröa)
Doma: How are you, Zhaxi?

Zhaxi: I'm fine. And you?

Doma: I'm fine, too.
Unit 2 Nice to meet you!

Useful Expressions

1 Nice to meet you! ཆོས་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་གང་ཐོང་། ཆོས་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་གང་ཐོང་།

2 I’m a herdsman. ལབས་ཐོགས་པ་ནི་མིན།

3 Are you a farmer? Yes, I am. / No, I’m not. ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན། / ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན།

4 What is your nationality? My nationality is Tibetan. / I’m Tibetan. ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན། སྡེན་པའི་གཞི་བཞིན་ལ་དབུས་པ་ནི་མིན།

5 Are you Tibetan? Yes, I’m Tibetan. ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན། སྡེན་པའི་གཞི་བཞིན་ལ་དབུས་པ་ནི་མིན།

Grammar

ལེགས་བྱུང་གི་སྤྲ་སྦྱོང་

**“Be”** “is” “am” “are” ཚོས་ལྷག་མེན་པོ་བཞིན་“ིར” སྒོ་གྱིས། ཕྱིན་ལག་རྩ་ཐོགས་པ་དག་སྔོན་པར་ཡོད་པར་འགན་སྦྱོང་གི་སྤྲ་སྦྱོང་.

1 Is ཇི་སྨྲ་ཚགུལ་(he, she, it) ཚོས་ལྷག་“is” སྤྱོད་དམིགས་

1a Is he a student? Yes, he is. / Yes, he’s a student. ལས་ཐོགས་ལེགས་ཉིད་ནི་སྦྱེབས་པ་ནི། སྦྱེབས་ནི། ལས་ཐོགས་ལེགས་ཉིད།

1b Is she Tibetan? No, she is American. ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན། སྡེན་པའི་གཞི་བཞིན་ལ་དབུས་པ་ནི་མིན།

1c Is it a sheep? Yes, it is. / Yes, it’s a sheep. ཆོས་དྲེན་ཐོགས་ནི་ཉིད། སྦྱེབས་ནི་ཉིད།

1d Is your name…? Yes, my name is... (My name ཞེས་“it” ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན་“is” སྤྱོད་དམིགས་) ཆོས་དྲེན་ཐོགས་ནི་ཉིད། སྦྱེབས་ནི་ཉིད།

2 Am ཇི་སྨྲ་ཚགུལ் “I” ཚོས་ལྷག་“am” སྤྱོད་དམིགས་

2a Am I beautiful? Yes, you’re beautiful. / No, you are ugly. སྒོ་གྱིས། སྦྱེབས། སྦྱེབས་དཔེ་འབྲོན། / སྦྱེབས། སྦྱེབས་དཔེ་འབྲོན།

2b Am I right? Yes, you are right. / No, you are wrong. སྒོ་གྱིས། སྦྱེབས། སྦྱེབས་དཔེ་འབྲོན། / སྦྱེབས། སྦྱེབས་དཔེ་འབྲོན།

2c Am I Kate? No, you are Pete. ཆོས་དྲེན་ཐོགས་ནི་མིན། སྦྱེབས་ནི་མིན།

2d Am I a good student? Yes, you are. སྒོ་གྱིས། སྦྱེབས་དཔེ་འབྲོན། སྦྱེབས་ནི་མིན།

3 Are ཇི་སྨྲ་ཚགུལ་“you” ཚོས་ལྷག་“are” སྤྱོད་དམིགས་

3a Are you Losang? Yes, I am. / No, I’m Dawa. ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན། སྦྱེབས། / སྦྱེབས། སྦྱེབས་དཔེ་འབྲོན།

3b Are you a teacher? No, I’m a student. ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན། སྦྱེབས་དཔེ་འབྲོན།

3c Are you OK? Yes, I’m OK. ཆོས་དྲེན་བསྟན་ནོས་ཀྱི་ནི་མིན། སྦྱེབས་ནི་མིན།
Text Explanation

1 Nice to meet you! Nice meeting you! "Glad to meet you!" "Pleased to meet you!"

1a Nice meeting you! (Glad to meet you!) "Pleased to meet you!"

1b Kanzhu: Hello! What is your name? Cizhon: My name is Cizhon. And what’s your name? Kanzhu: My name is Kanzhu. Nice to meet you, Cizhon.

Cizhon: Nice meeting you, Kanzhu.

2 Can you say the English letters? Can you speak English? Yes, I can speak a little bit of English.

2a Can you say the English letters? Can you speak English? Yes, I can speak a little bit of English.

2b Can you read this English text? Yes, I can.

2c Can you read this English text? Yes, I can.

2d Are these Tibetan letters? No, they are English letters.

3 Don’t forget “O” and “R.” Don’t forget your mother language. Don’t forget you’re a student.

3a Don’t forget. Don’t forget your mother language. Don’t forget you’re a student.

3b Don’t forget your mother language.

3c Don’t forget you’re a student.

4 Turn to page two.

4a Turn to page two.

4b Please turn to me and speak loudly.

4c Please turn to page thirty-three.
Unit 3 Can you spell it?

Useful Expressions

1 Good afternoon! ">
2 Sorry. ">
3 Oh, good! ">
4 How do you do! ">
5 Can you spell it, please?  }
6 What is this in English?  }
7 B-double O-K.  }
8 Goodbye!  }

Text Explanation

1 Good afternoon!  />
1a Good morning!  />
1b Good evening!  />
1c Good night!  />
2 Sorry. = I’m sorry.  />
3 It doesn’t matter.  />
4 A: Are you Dorji?  />
B: No, I’m not.  />
A: Sorry.  />
B: It doesn’t matter.  />
A: What is your name?  />
B: My name is Dulu. And what’s your name?  />
A: My name is Cizhon. Nice to meet you, Dulu.  />
B: Nice to meet you too, Cizhon.  />
5 Excuse me! Are you Mr. Green?  />
5a Excuse me!  />
5b Excuse me, where is my pen?  >
5c Excuse me, I must go now. གི་ཚོས་བསྟ་ཅན། དུས་རེས་དང་ནཱ་དང་།

6 How do you do! རིག་པོ་ (“How do you do!” རིག་པོ་“How do you do!”སོགས།)
6a Doma: Dulu, this is my friend, Zhaxi. Zhaxi, this is my younger brother, Dulu. རིག་པོ་འདི་རིག་པོ་

ཐོག་གམ་གིས། གསར་ཐོག་འདི་ལ་དོན།

Dulu: How do you do, Zhaxi? རིག་པོ་“How do you do!”

Zhaxi: How do you do, Dulu? རིག་པོ་ཇི་།

7 Can you spell it, please? རིག་པོ་“(སོགས་)ཕྲན་གྲངས་ཡོད་པ་?”
7a Can you spell “sheep”? རིག་པོ་“sheep”ཐོག་གམ་ཡོད་པ་?”

8 in + language
8a What do you call this + in + language?
8b How do you say this + in + language?
8c A: What’s this in English? རིག་པོ་“What’s this in English?”

B: It’s a desk. རིག་“desk”ཅོད།

A: What do you call this in English? རིག་པོ་“What do you call this in English?”

B: I call it “desk” in English. རིག་པོ་“desk”ཅོད།

9 B-double O-K. || B-Oསྦྱུར་-K
9a S-H-double-E-P. || S-H-Eསྦྱུར་-P
9b F-double-O-T. || F-སྦྱུར་-T.
Useful Expressions

1 Are you in row 3? Yes, I am. / No, I’m not in row 3.
2 Which grade are you in? I’m in grade 4.
3 What class are you in? I’m in class 3.
4 How old are you? I’m eleven.
5 Are you ten?
6 What’s one and two? One and two is three.
7 Are you studying mathematics? No, I’m not studying mathematics. I’m studying English.
8 Where are you studying? I’m studying at Qinghai Nationalities University.

Text Explanation

1 Number

1a Row 3, number 2.
1b Bus No. (= number) 10.
1c Room 101
1d Lesson 8
1e Page 139
1f Student book 1
1g Workbook 2
1h Unit 4
1i Number 2 Middle School.

2 A: Hello! B, how are you this morning? A: Hello! B, how are you this morning?
B: I’m fine. How about you?
A: Couldn’t be better. Why are you up so early this morning?
B: Because my family found an apartment at our school. So it became more convenient for me to go to class so I won’t be late any more. गर्ल जुध्नो हराइन लाग्ने, जनाउन म हराउनको लागाउन मान्छो देखाउहुने भएरी नौबाट भएको लागाउनको

A: That’s good. Excuse me, may I have your family’s apartment number? जोखालाई पूर्व पुर्खको लाखो बनाउहुने पुर्खको

B: Sure. My family’s apartment number is 302. यहाँ गर्ल जुध्नो हराइन लाग्ने मान्छो देखाउहुने भएरी नौबाट भएको लागाउनको

A: I’m sorry. Which building and which floor? झिनका भएको लागाउनको

B: Fourth building, second floor. नौबाट भएको लागाउनको

A: Thank you very much. जानाउनके

B: You’re welcome. जानाउनके

3 How old are you? I’m ten. त्यहाँ उम्र है ।

A: How old is he? तिने कैसे है?

B: He is nine. तनी बाली नापून यहाँ उम्र है?

A: How old is she? जयां कैसे है?

B: She is ten years old. तीनी बाली नापून यहाँ उम्र है?

A: How old am I? त्यहाँ उम्र है?

B: I don’t know. त्यहाँ उम्र है?

A: Can you guess? त्यहाँ उम्र है?

B: I think you are eleven years old. त्यहाँ उम्र है?

A: No, I’m older than that. Would you like to try again? त्यहाँ उम्र है?

B: Yes, I’d like to try again. Are you thirteen years old? त्यहाँ उम्र है?

A: Yes, you’re right. I’m thirteen years old. त्यहाँ उम्र है?

4 Polly, what’s one and two? = How much is one and two? = How much is one plus (+) one? त्यहाँ उम्र है?

4a One and two is three. त्यहाँ उम्र है?

4b What’s five and four? What is five plus four? Nine. (Five and four is nine). त्यहाँ उम्र है?
4c What is eight minus two?  Eight minus two is six.

4d What is three times five?  Three times five is fifteen.

4e What is nine divided by three?  Nine divided by three is three.

5 Ah, it’s a secret!

6 What class are you in?  I’m in class 1.

6a What grade are you in?  I’m in grade 3.

6b What row are you in?  I’m in row 5.

6c Zhaxi: Hello! Dorji, how are you?  Dorji: I’m fine, and you?

Zhaxi: I’m fine too. Excuse me, does your family have any livestock (yaks, sheep, horses, donkeys, goats, and mules)?  Dorji: Yes, my family does.

Zhaxi: How many yaks does your family have?  Dorji: My family has forty-two yaks.

Zhaxi: How many sheep does your family have?  Dorji: My family has two hundred and sixty-five sheep.

Zhaxi: Thank you for telling me about your family’s livestock numbers.

Dorji: You’re welcome.

7 Dorji has two older brothers and his father would like to divide his sheep and yaks among his three sons.

7a How many sheep will Dorji have?

7b What is one hundred sixty five divided by three?

7c How many yaks will Dorji have?

7d What is forty two divided by three?
### The verb BE "be"

| Be | Question: जैन  (Be + Pronoun + Noun) || (be +कर्तक+ लहरक) | Answer: जैन  (Pronoun + Be + Noun) || (कर्तक+be+लहरक) |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Am  | Am I tall? जानाउँछौँ  | Yes, you are. जैन  | Yes, you’re tall. जैन  |
|     | Am I fat? जानाउँछौँ  | *Yes, you are. जैन  | Yes, you’re fat. जैन  |
|     | Am I fast? जानाउँछौँ  | No, you are not. अर्जैन  | No, you’re not fast. अर्जैन  |
| Are | Are you a teacher? शिक्षकी सहितकैसै  | No, I am not. अर्जैन  | No, I’m not a teacher. अर्जैन  |
|     | Are you in Row 3? जुटाउँसुर तत्त्वाबर्था  | Yes, I am. जैन  | Yes, I’m in Row 3. जैन  |
|     | Are you 41? जून छापर लेखितकैसै  | No, I am not. I am 14. अर्जैन  | No, I’m not. I’m 14. अर्जैन  |

* "बेचरिए" "Yes, you are." जबसवा "Yes, you’re a student." जबसवा "Yes, you’re." जबसवा "are" जबसवा "are" जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा जबसवा।
Unit 5 What's this in English?

Useful Expressions

1 What’s this (in English)? It’s a clock / pencil-box / cup. ıt'ı钟“clock”/w “pencil-box”/“cup”
2 Is this a pen? Yes, it is. / No, it isn’t. ı́n“pen”/ı́n“pen”
3 It’s a banana / an apple / an egg / an orange. ıt’ı钟*“banana”/ı́na*“apple”/ı́n“egg”/ı́nt“orange”
4 What’s that? ıt’ı钟*“that”
5 Is that a bike / a car / a bus? ıt’ı钟*“bike”/ıt’ı钟*“car”/ıt’ı钟*“bus”

Grammar

“This”/“that”/“this”/“that”/“that”/“that”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question form</th>
<th>Answer form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| This ıt’ı钟* | It is an icon. [icon = ฃุ่ใต้]
| What’s this? | It’s an icon.
| Is this a Tibetan robe? | Yes, it is.
| Who is this? | This is my brother.
| Is this your older sister? | No, this is my mother. |
| That ıt’ı钟* | That is our Tibetan teacher. |
| Who is that? | No, it’s not a sheep. It’s a goat. |
| Is that a sheep? | It’s a wild yak. |
| What’s that? |

Text Explanation

1A What’s this in English? ıt’ı钟*“this”

This...

1a This is a chair. ıt’ı钟*“chair”
1b This is a pencil. ıt’ı钟*“pencil”
1c This is a bowl. ıt’ı钟*“bowl”

1B What’s this in English? ıt’ı钟*“this” (ıt’ı钟*“this”)

1d It’s a clock. ıt’ı钟“clock”
1e It’s a dog / horse. ıt’ı钟*“dog”/ıt’ı钟*“horse” (It’s=it is.)
1f What’s this? ıt’ı钟*“what” It’s a map. ıt’ı钟*“map”

•22•
2 And what’s this? 

2a And... दल्लटको फुलु "जुम्लाहरुको सिमायो"?

2b This is a pen. And this is a pencil. यहाँ रहा है एक पेन। और यहाँ रहा है एक पेशिमग्रहण।

2c This is a book. And this is a notebook. यहाँ रहा है एक किताब। और यहाँ रहा है एक नोटबुक।

3 A: Is this a pen? यहाँ रहा है एक पेन?

B: Yes, it is. अन्डे, उहाँ है।

A: Is that a desk? यहाँ रहा है एक टीबी?

B: Yes, it is a desk. अन्डे, उहाँ है एक टीबी।

4 What’s that in English? यहाँ रहा है एक पेशिमग्रहण?

4a ... that... दल्लटको फुलु "सिमायो"?

4b Is that a goat? No, it isn’t. It is a sheep. यहाँ रहा है एक गाई? नहीं, उहाँ रहा है एक गाई।

4c This is my book. That is your book. यहाँ रहा है मुझको किताब। उहाँ रहा है तुमको किताब।

5 Look! That’s a car. दल्लटको फुलु "आयो"?

5a Look! That’s a horse. दल्लटको फुलु "जी"?

5b Look! That’s my family tent. दल्लटको फुलु "समुदायको शेयर"?

6 Is that an English car? आयो रहा है एक इंग्लिश कार?

6a Is that your village? आयो रहा है तुमको गाँव?

6b Is that your horse? आयो रहा है तुमको गाई?
Grammar ཨརོག་རྟོན་ལོག

English…adjective མཁས་པ་ོད་ཡིག

1 Is that a black car? Yes, it is. བ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་འཛིན་དངོས་པོ་ཟིན། བ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་འཛིན་དངོས་པོ་ཟིན།
   1a Is that a red hat? No, it isn’t. It’s a white hat. བ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་འཛིན་དངོས་པོ་ཟིན། བ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་འཛིན་དངོས་པོ་ཟིན།
      བ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་འཛིན་དངོས་པོ་ཟིན།
   1b Is that a dog? No, it isn’t. It is a wolf. བ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་འཛིན་དངོས་པོ་ཟིན། བ་ཀྱི་དཀྱིལ་འཛིན་དངོས་པོ་ཟིན།

2 English, Chinese, Japanese, American, Tibetan ཚིག་མིག་སྐད་ལོག རོལ་ཙོམ་བོམ་སྐད་ལོག རོལ་ཙོམ་བོམ་སྐད་ལོག སྐབས་ཐོབ་སྐད་ལོག
   2a He is English. བཞིན་གྲུབ་ཞིག་ཡིན།
   2b He is an Englishman. བཞིན་གྲུབ་ཞིག་ཕྱིན་པ་ཡིན།
   2c She is Japanese. བཞིན་བོད་པ་ཡིན།
   2d She is a Japanese girl. བཞིན་བོད་པ་དུ་མོ་ཡིན།
# Unit 6 How old is he?

**Useful Expressions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Who is this / that? This / That is... [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>Who’s that in picture 1? [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Who is my friend? Is your friend a boy or a girl? [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>How old is he / she? He / She is... [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>I think he’s very old. [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>What’s his / her / its name? [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3a</td>
<td>This is a bird. Its name is... [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3b</td>
<td>Its tail is long. [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3c</td>
<td>It’s mine. [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Is she / he at school? I don’t know. [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4a</td>
<td>Is everyone here today? [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4b</td>
<td>Is your brother at home? No, he left for Xining yesterday morning. [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Yes, that’s right! [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5a</td>
<td>Today is Monday, right? [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5b</td>
<td>Tomorrow is her birthday, right? [Yes, that’s right!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Grammar**

1 Using *he, she, and it.* **“He/she, it”**

1a How old is he / she / it? He / She / It is 13.
1b It’s very fat / tall / big. (The yak is very fat. The tree is very tall. The house is very big.)
1c Is he / she / at home? Yes, he / she is at home.
1d Is he / she a student? No, he / she is a teacher.
1e Is it an eagle? Yes, it is. No, it is a vulture.

2 **Who**?

2a Who is that? Who is he / she? A: Who is he?
2b Do you understand? / Do you know the answer?
2c I think he is in the classroom.
2d Is he / she a student? No, he / she is a teacher.
2e It’s very fat / tall / big. (The yak is very fat. The tree is very tall. The house is very big.)

3 **Is**?

3a Is it an eagle? Yes, it is. No, it is a vulture.
3b Is he / she a student? No, he / she is a teacher.
3c How old is he / she / it? He / She / It is 13.
3d Is he / she at home? Yes, he / she is at home.

4 **Who**?

4a Who are they in picture 2? B: He is my younger brother. His name is Dorji and he is a student, too.
4b Who’s that in picture 1? B: I am Rabji. I am a student.

**Text Explanation**

1 **Who**?

1a Who is that? Who is he / she? A: Who is he?
1b A: Who are you? B: I am Rabji. I am a student.
1c A: Who is he? B: He is my younger brother. His name is Dorji and he is a student, too.
1d Who is your best friend? B: He is Dorji.
1e Who is your English teacher? B: He is my English teacher.

2 **I don’t know.**

2a Do you know the answer? Yes, I do. / No, I don’t know.
2b Do you understand? Yes, I understand. / No, I don’t understand.

3 **I think**

3a I think ... A: I think ...
3b I think he is in the classroom.

4 **In picture**

4a Who are they in picture 2? B: He is my younger brother. His name is Dorji and he is a student, too.
4b Who’s that in picture 1? B: He is Dorji.
5 In... /... |
5a Is everyone here today?  སྣ་ཚུན། ཚིག་པའི་ཚེས་དངས།
Yes, everyone is here.  འབྲི་ཚེག་དཔེར་བྱེད།
5b Is Bill in, Sam?  བི་མི་འོ་ན། མཐོ་ “བི”
5c Is your father in? No, he is out.  སྤེན་པ་བོད་པའི་ཚེས་དངས། འབྲི་ཚེག་དཔེར་བྱེད།

6 At school... /... |
6a Is she at school today? Yes, she is.  སེམས་དཔོན་བོད་པའི་ཚེས་དངས། སེམས་དཔོན་བོད་པའི་ཚེས་དངས།
6b Is your brother at home? Yes, he is at home.  སེམས་དཔོན་བོད་པའི་ཚེས་དངས། སེམས་དཔོན་བོད་པའི་ཚེས་དངས།

7 Is your friend a boy or a girl?  སྤངས་སུ་ཚེག་པའི་ཚེས་དངས།
7a Is that your household’s cow or my household’s cow? That is my family’s cow.  སྤེན་པའི་དཔེ་དགའ་བོད་པའི་ཚེས་དངས། སྤེན་པའི་དཔེ་དགའ་བོད་པའི་ཚེས་དངས།
Unit 7 Is this your pencil-box?

Useful Expressions

1 Is this your / my / his / her pencil-box? Yes, it is. / No, it isn’t.

2 Here you are.

3 Where’s my cup? It’s here.

4 What are these / those? They’re books.

5 Are these / those / they English books? Yes, they are. / No, they aren’t.

6 They’re their books.

7 That’s all right.

8 Numbers: one, two, three, four, five...

Grammar

1 Using “my, your, his, her and its.”

1a Is this your scarf? Yes, it is. / No, it isn’t.

1b Is this his scarf? Yes, it is. / No, it isn’t.

1c Is this her scarf? Yes, it is. / No, it isn’t.

1d Whose Tibetan robe is this? It’s my Tibetan robe.

2 Number and plural forms of nouns

2a There is a student in the classroom.

There are thirty students in the classroom.

There is only one apple on the tree.

There are ten apples on the tree.

2b One apple

Two apples

One hundred
Using “these, those,” and “they.” || “These”/“those, they”

“These”/“those, they” སྣེ་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་དེ་དེའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག

“Those”/“these, they” སྣེ་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་དེ་དེའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག

“They” ཡན་/ ཡན་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question form</th>
<th>རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག</th>
<th>Answer form</th>
<th>རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>These ཡན་</td>
<td>What are these?</td>
<td>They are icons.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are these pears?</td>
<td>No, they are apples.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Those ཡན་</td>
<td>Are those mules?</td>
<td>Yes, they are.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What are those?</td>
<td>They are Tibetan tents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This ཡན་ these ཡན་
That ཡན་ those ཡན་

Text Explanation ཞིབ་ཤེས་བདག་བསྟན་པས།

1 Here you are! རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག

2 A: May I borrow your eraser? གཞན་ཐོད་དེ་ལས་བདག་བསྟན་པས།
   B: Of course, here it is. དེ་ལས་ ཡན་
   2a A: Excuse me! Is this your book? གཞན་ཐོད་དེ་ལས་ ཡན་ཐོད་དེ་ལས་ ཡན་
      B: Yes, it is. རེད། ཡེད།
      A: Here you are. རེད། རེད།
      B: Thank you. རེད། རེད།
      A: You’re welcome. རེད། རེད།

3 Answers for “Thank you.” || “Thank you”/ རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག

5a That’s all right. རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག
5b That’s OK. རེད། རེད།
5c Not at all. རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག
5d You’re welcome. རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག
5e It’s my pleasure. རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག

4 Where is my cup? རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག

4a A: Where is my hat? Is that my hat? རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག
   B: No, I think it’s his hat. དེ་ལས་ རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག
   A: Dorji, is this your hat? ཡན་ རིག་པའི་དོན་ལྡན་ཞིག

•29•
C: Oh, yes, it is.
A: Here you are.
C: Thank you.
A: You’re welcome.

5 What are these? ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན།
5a What are these? These are goats. They are bananas. They are mules. They are cows. ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན། ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན། ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན། ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན།

6 A: It’s very good! རུང་དགུང་ཚིི།
B: Thank you. ཡ་དགགི་ཤིི།
6a A: Excuse me! Is this your Tibetan robe? འཇིག་ཐོབ། ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན།
B: Yes, it is. ལོ། ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཇེན།
A: It’s very nice! རུང་དགུང་ཚིི།
B: Thank you. ཡ་དགགི་ཤིི།

7 A: Are these English books? ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་དབུ་མུས་ཇེན།
B: Yes, they are. རིག་པོ་བཤེད་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན།
7a A: Are they your parents in this picture? ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ལ་ཞུན་ལ་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན།
B: Yes, they are. ལོ། ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན།
A: Are they farmers? ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཚིིི་ཤིི་རིམས།
B: No, they are herdsmen. ལོ། ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཇེན།
7b A: Excuse me! འཇིག་ཐོབ།
B: Yes? ལོ། ཡིད་ཇེན།
A: Is this your jacket? ཡིད་དགག་ཤིི་ཤིི་ཇེན།
B: Yes, it is. རེན། ཡིད་ཇེན།
A: Here you are. ལོ། རུང་དགུང་ཚིི།
B: Thanks. ཡ་དགགི་ཤིི།
A: That’s OK. རུང་དགུང་ཚིི།
8 Look at the picture and listen to the tape.

**Look at... ||... Listen to...**

8a Please, look at page 32.

8b Look at the cute boy.

8c Listen to your teacher, please!

8d Listen to the radio, please!

9 Answer this question:

9a What number is Jim’s bus?

Jim’s bus number is 12. / It’s 12.

10 “Ask” and “Answer”

11a May I ask you a question, please?

11b May I know your name, please?

11c Can you answer my question, please?
Unit 8 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1 In pairs, ask and answer. ฉันคือนักเรียน obligatory to be a student
2 Next number. ฉันมีจุด
3 Say the numbers: 3... 18. ฉันยาวเท่ากับน้ำหนักน้ำ
4 What would you like to drink? I would like to drink a cup of milk tea. ฉันต้องการดื่มชามолทิส
4a Would you like to watch a movie? Yes, I would. ฉันต้องการดูหนัง
4b You don’t know the answer. I don’t know, either. ฉันไม่รู้คำตอบ
5 How is the weather today? It’s sunny / cloudy / windy. ฉันรู้อากาศ

Text Explanation

1 In pairs, ask and answer. ฉันต้องการดื่มชามолทิส
1a In pairs, read and write. ฉันต้องการดื่มชามолทิส

2 “Too” and “either” || “Too”ดัง“either” “too”ดัง“either”
2a I’m a student. He is a student, too. ฉันเป็นนักเรียน
2b You don’t know the answer. I don’t know, either. ฉันไม่รู้คำตอบ

3 Play the game “Next Number!” “ที่นี่เกิดตัว”ก่อนนักเรียน
3a Play basketball. ที่นี่เกิดตัว
3b Play football. ที่นี่เกิดตัว

4 Count like this: one, two, three, four... ฉันจะไปโรงเรียน... ฉัน... ฉัน... ฉัน...
   ... like this ฉันจะไปโรงเรียน...
4a Please, write it like this. ฉันจะไปโรงเรียน
4b Read it like this, please. ฉันจะไปโรงเรียน

5 Listen to the tape and answer these questions in your workbook. ฉันต้องการดื่มชามолทิส
5a Please, listen to me and write down my questions in your notebook.

6 Can I see your license, please?
6a Can I see your pictures?
6b Can you jump out the window?

7 What grade is he in?
7a What class are you in?
7b What row is he in?
7c What team is he on?
7d He is on the Lakers team.

8 It is the No. 14 Middle School.
8a It’s the No. 2 bus.

9 At school I have a friend.
9a At home I have a cat.
9b At school I have many books.
Unit 9 The new students

Useful Expressions

1 Are we all here? भन्ने त्यस्तोलोकलाई दिनै?
2 They aren’t here. भन्ने ठाउँ छैन
3 Put our coats here. नीलामी प्राप्त
4 Who is on duty today? दायित्वको जानकारी?
5 Look after them. उनलाई स्कूटाउँछ
6 This way please! यसलाई सकारातम
7 Nice to meet you! त्यसमा भेलौ?

Text Explanation

1 Who’s on duty today? दायित्वको जानकारी?

on duty...

1a Zhaxi is on duty today. ज्ञातहाँ दिनै?
1b They are on duty today. ज्ञातहाँ दिनै?
1c We are all on duty today. ज्ञातहाँ तालै?

2 Are we all here? = Is everyone here today? भन्ने त्यस्तोलोकलाई दिनै?

2a Are they all students? ज्ञातहाँ तली?
2b Are they all Tibetan monks? Yes, they are. / No, some of them are American monks. ज्ञातहाँ तली?

3 Who isn’t at school today? ज्ञातमै शाखालाई दिनै?

3a Who isn’t here today? ज्ञातमै दिनै?

4 Where are they? ज्ञातहाँ?

4a I don’t know. They aren’t here. ज्ञातहाँ?
4b I think they are at home. ज्ञातहाँ?

5 Where is he / she? ज्ञातहाँ?

5a I think he is in the classroom. ज्ञातहाँ?
5b I think she is American.

6 Today we have two new students.
   6a We have... 
   6b New student.
   6c I have two pencils.
   6d Today I have a new hat.

7 Their names are Lucy and Lily.
   7a Their hats are new.
   7b Three and eight are their numbers.

8 We’re twins!

9 OK. Please sit down over there.
   Over there... 
   9a He is over there.
   9b Can you see the cow over there?

10 Sorry! You look the same!
   Look the same... 
   10c Your pen and his pen look the same.
   10d The girls over there look the same.

11 Han Meimei, please look after the twins today.
   Look after...
   11a Please look after the baby.
   11b Please look after my car.

Grammar

1 Plural forms of the verb “BE.”
   1a Are you / they in class 3? Yes, we / they are.

1b Are you / they twins? Yes, we / they are.

1c What grade are you / they in? We / They / are in grade one.

1d Are you American? No, I’m French.

2 Possessive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular forms</th>
<th>Plural forms</th>
<th>Nominative and possessive cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am Zhaxi.</td>
<td>We have horses.</td>
<td>I --- my --- my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My name is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>Our horses are white.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are Zhaxi.</td>
<td>You have hats.</td>
<td>You---your ---your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your name is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>Your hats are red.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is Doma.</td>
<td>She has cats.</td>
<td>She---her ---her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her name is Doma.</td>
<td>Her cats are brown.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>He has cats.</td>
<td>He---his ---his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His name is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>His cats are white</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is Polly.</td>
<td>It has toys.</td>
<td>it---its ---its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Its name is Polly.</td>
<td>Its toys are red.</td>
<td>We---our ---our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>They---their ---their</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 10 Where is it?

Useful Expressions གཉིས་མ་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་
1 Who’s that? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
2 Is it…or…? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
3 Who are they? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
4 Look at the picture. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
5 Who are on duty today? They are on duty today. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
6 Can you see…? Yes, I can. / No, I can’t. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
7 Where are Lucy’s pencils? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
8 It looks like a cat. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
9 Put them over there, please. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
10 Where is his family tent? His family tent is at the foot of Maqin Mountain. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་

Grammar གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
Using “the.” II “The” གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
1) གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
   1a Singular noun: the sun, the moon གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
2) གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་ གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
   2a I have a cat. The cat likes meat. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
   2b I can see a football? Where is the football? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་

Text Explanation གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
1 Who’s that? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
   1a Who is that man? That is my older brother. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
   1b Who is the girl in the hat? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
   1c The boy in the yellow jacket is tall. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
2 Are the twins in different classes? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
   2a Are you guys in different classes? གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
       No, we are in the same class. གཉིས་མ་བཞི་
3 This is a picture of my classroom. 

3a What is this? 

This is a picture of my village.

4 Look at the picture.

4a Look at the yak over there.

4b Please look at page 109.

5 Can you see the door? Can you see a door? 

5a A: Can you see the eraser? 

B: Yes, I can.

A: Where is it? 

B: It’s on the teacher’s desk.

6 It looks like a cat!

6a Your older brother looks like you.

6b This hat looks like my hat.

7 Where is your home?

My home is in Hor Village, Cuzhou Township, Jiantsa County, Malho Prefecture, Qinghai Province.
Unit 11 Come and meet the family!

Useful Expressions
1 Come and meet my family.  རེ་འདྲ་གཞི་འཛམ་གྱིས་བྱ།
2 What’s the name of her cat? བོད་བོ་སྒྲོ་བོས་གཤེར་བྱ།
3 Who’re they? They’re my grandparents. རེ་འདར་གཞི་རིང་མིགས་སུ་ཞིག
4 Go and see.  མི་ཐུབ་བབས་
5 Nice to meet / see you.  རེ་འདར་འབྲོལ་འབྲོལ་བབས་
6 Please come in.  མི་འེལ་བཞི་ཆེས།

Grammar

Possessives
1) “Zhaxi’s” དབེ་ེན་ཐོ་མ་
   1a Who is that (man)? He is Zhaxi’s father.  དབེ་ེན་ཐོ་མ་ནི་ཕབ་ རེ་འདར་གཞི་འཛམ་
   1b Is this your pen? No, it’s Cairang’s pen.  དབེ་ེན་ཐོ་མ་ནི་ཕབ་ རེ་འདར་གཞི་འཛམ་
   1c Is that Doma’s cat? No, it’s Drukar’s cat.  དབེ་ེན་ཐོ་མ་ནི་ཕབ་ རེ་འདར་གཞི་འཛམ་

  1d My sisters’ children.  དབེ་ེན་ཐོ་མ་ནི་ཕབ་ལེགས་སུ་ཞིག

Imperatives
2a Go and see! མི་འེལ་བཞི་ཆེས།
2b May I come in? Come in, please.  རེ་འདར་འབྲོལ་འབྲོལ་བབས་
2c Come and meet the family.  རེ་འདྲ་གཞི་འཛམ་གྱིས་
2d Please, be careful.  རེ་འདོན་བདོ་
2e Sit down, please.  རེ་འདར་འབྲོལ་འབྲོལ་བབས་
2f Be quiet, please.  རེ་འདྲ་གཞི་འཛམ་གྱིས་
2g Let me try. རེ་འདྲ་གཞི་འཛམ་གྱིས་
2h Let’s go together.  རེ་འདར་འབྲོལ་འབྲོལ་བབས་
**Text Explanation**

1. Come and meet my family.  
   1a. Come here and have a seat.

2. What’s that? It’s a picture of my family.

3. Oh, can I see it?
   3a. May I have a look?

4. Nice to meet you!
   4a. Nice to see you!
   4b. Glad to see you.

5. Please come in.
   5a. May I come in? Come in, please.

6. Sit down and have a cup of tea with me.
   6a. Sit down and have a conversation with me.
   6b. Come here and have an apple.

**Conversation**

Dorji: Hello! How are you?


Dorji: I’m one of Zhaxi’s classmates and my name is Dorji. Are you Zhaxi’s mother?

Doma: No, I’m Zhaxi’s older sister.

Dorji: Oh, sorry. May I speak to Zhaxi, please?

Doma: Sure. He’s riding a bicycle in the yard. I’ll call him.

Zhaxi: Hi, Dorji. I’m sorry. My father bought me a new bicycle and I was riding it in my house yard.

How is everything going with you?
Dorji: Not bad, but my parents have gone to my uncle’s home and won’t come back tonight. I feel a little alone. Will you be free this evening?

Zhaxi: I’m free except for having a little homework to do.

Dorji: Then how about you bringing your homework to my home and we will do it.

Zhaxi: When will I come?

Dorji: It’s up to you.

Zhaxi: What about seven-thirty?  གཞལ་བཙོ་བཟླ་བཞི་ལེགས་འཐོབ་པ་ནི་ཡུལ་

Dorji: OK. See you soon! Bye!

Zhaxi: See you soon! Bye!
Unit 12 What can you see?

Useful Expressions

1 What can you see in the picture?
2 I can’t find…
3 It’s your turn now.

Grammar

1 Using “the” and “a”. || “The” || “a”

A… the [noun] / a [noun] The… a [noun] / the [noun]

1a I have a storybook.

B: Where is the pen / the book / the watch / the eraser?

1b A: I can see a pen / a book / a watch / an eraser.

B: It’s on the teacher’s desk.

1c some pictures / the pictures

1d A: I can see some birds.

B: They are in the tree.

Text Explanation

1 What can you see in the picture?

1a A: What can you see in the tent?

B: I can see a slingshot.

A: Where is the slingshot?

B: It’s on the bed.

2 I can see some flowers.

...on the tree / in the tree

---

• 42 •
2a A: What can you see in the garden?  
B: I can see some trees.
A: What can you see on the trees?  
B: I can see some red apples.
2b What can you see in the tree?  
I can see some birds in the tree.

3 I can’t find the broom. Can you see it?
3a A: Excuse me, Lodan. I can’t find the mop. Can you see it?  
B: I’m sorry, I can’t. Is it behind the door?  
A: No, it isn’t.  
B: Er, is it under the bed?  
A: Yes, you’re right. Thank you.
B: You’re welcome.
3b A: I can’t find my notebook.  
B: I can see it. Look! It’s over there, on the teacher’s desk.

4 Oh! That’s not my pen. It’s Lily’s.
4a Oh! That’s not your fault. It’s mine.

5 It’s your turn now.
5a Now it’s your turn to tell us a story.
Unit 13 What colour is it?

Useful Expressions

1 What colour is it? It’s red / black / white / blue / green / yellow / brown / orange. 

2 Which man? The one in / on the...

3 What is in my hand? 

4 What colour are they? 

5 Can’t you see? 

6 What colour is the sky? The sky is blue.

Grammar

Using “what is” and “who is.” || “What is...”|| “who is...”

1 “What is”?

1a What colour is it? It’s green. 

1b What colour is Cairang’s Tibetan robe? It’s blue and yellow. 

1c What colour are these / those? They are black.

2 “Who is”?

2a Who is the boy? Which boy? The one wearing a red hat. Oh, he is Zhaxi.

Text Explanation

1 What colour is it?

1a A: Hi! What colour is your family’s tent? 

B: It’s black.

1b A: Do you know what colour my family’s tent is? 

B: No, I don’t know. Is it black and white? 

A: Yes, you are right. Good guess.

2 What day is today?

Today is Monday / Tuesday / Thursday...

•44•
3 Excuse me, Jim. Who’s that man?

3a A: Excuse me, Cairang who’s that boy?

B: Which boy?

A: The one on the black bike.

B: Oh, that’s Dorji.

4 Can’t you see? They’re boxes!

4a A: What are these?

B: Can’t you see? They’re boxes!

A: Yes, but what are in the boxes?

B: Oh, shirts.

A: What colour are they?

B: They’re white.
Unit 14 That’s mine

Useful Expressions

1 Whose is this / that…? สารี / ติ่งคริ

2 Is it yours? No, it’s not mine. สารี / ติ่งคริ

3 Let me see, please. ติ่งคริ

4 I think it’s his / hers. ติ่งคริ / ติ่งคริ

5 Put it on. ติ่งคริก้นติ่งคริ

6 Whose…are these? ติ่งคริ

Text Explanation

1 Whose shirt is this? ติ่งคริ

1a Whose trousers are these? ติ่งคริ

They’re the twins’. ติ่งคริ

2 You must look after your clothes. ติ่งคริ

Look after…

2a You must look after the baby. ติ่งคริ

2b You should look after that book. ติ่งคริ

3 They are on Mrs. Green’s clothesline. ติ่งคริ

3a There are many clothes on the students’ clothesline. ติ่งคริ

4 Is this yours, Lily? ติ่งคริ

4a A: Is this yours, Zhaxi? ติ่งคริ

B: No, it’s not mine. It’s hers. ติ่งคริ

5 Let me see, please. No, it’s not mine. I think it’s his. ติ่งคริ

5a Teacher: Whose coat is this? Is this yours, Duden? ติ่งคริ

Duden: Let me see, please. No, it’s not mine. I think it’s his. ติ่งคริ

Teacher: Whose? Hangdi’s? ติ่งคริ

Duden: Yes. ติ่งคริ

Teacher: Hi, Hangdi. Come here. Is this yours? ติ่งคริ

Hangdi: Yes, it’s mine. ติ่งคริ

Teacher: Here you are. Put it on, please. You must look after your clothes. ติ่งคริ

Hangdi: Yes, thank you, Teacher. ติ่งคริ
Grammar བརྒྱུད་དགའ་བོད།

1 “Whose” རྩེ“who”དེ་བཞིན་གེ་ཚེ་ནི་གཞི་“who”ཉིད་པའི་ཨེན་ཐོང་བཞིན་ལ་བཞིན་ལས།

1a Whose hat is this? It’s his hat / It’s his. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།

1b Whose pen is this? It’s my pen. / It’s mine. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།

2 Possessive Pronouns རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>My སྦིན</th>
<th>They are my Tibetan robes. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</th>
<th>Mine སྦིན</th>
<th>They are mine. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Your སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are your Tibetan robes. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
<td>Yours སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are yours. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His སྦིན</td>
<td>They are his Tibetan robes. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
<td>His སྦིན</td>
<td>They are his. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are her Tibetan robes. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
<td>Hers སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are hers. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are our Tibetan robes. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
<td>Ours སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are ours. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are your Tibetan robes. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
<td>Yours སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are yours. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are their Tibetan robes. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
<td>theirs སྦིན་ལོ།</td>
<td>They are theirs. རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ། རྩེ་ཚེ་ཐེ་ལ།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 15 What’s the time?

Useful Expressions

1 That’s nice. นี่ก็มันน่าจะดีนะ
don’t have a watch.

2 Give it to Mr Hu. ให้มันให้เจ้าหน้าที่

3 What’s the time? It’s seven-thirty. นี่เวลาเก้าทีครึ่ง

4 I don’t have a watch.

5 I must go.

Text Explanation

1 What’s the time? / What time is it? นี่เวลาเก้าทีครึ่ง

It’s nine-thirty. It’s about nine-thirty. It’s half past nine. It’s five to seven. นี่เวลาเก้าทีครึ่ง

2 Give it to Mr Hu. ให้มันให้เจ้าหน้าที่

2a Please give your grandfather the pipe. ให้เจ้าหน้าที่ให้เจ้าพ่อ

2b Please give the pipe to your grandfather. ให้เจ้าพ่อยังเจ้าพ่อ

3 I don’t have a watch.

3a A: Excuse me, what time is it, please? ขอโทษขอโทษเวลาเก้าทีครึ่ง

B: Sorry, I don’t have a watch. I think it’s about six o’clock. ขอโทษขอโทษเวลาเก้าทีครึ่ง

C: Let me see. No, it’s six-eighteen. ขอโทษขอโทษเวลาเก้าทีครึ่ง

A: Oh, I must go home. ขอโทษขอโทษเวลาเก้าทีครึ่ง

4 Put your shoes on. Take your shoes off. รองเท้าที่รองเท้าออก

4a Put on your shoes. Take off your shoes. รองเท้าที่รองเท้าออก

4b Put your coat on. Take your coat off. ผ้าที่ผ้าออก
Useful Expressions

1. They look young.
2. See you soon!
3. What is the date today? Today is April first, 2006.
4. When is your birthday? My birthday is July second.

Text Explanation

1. Her skirt is on her bed.
   …on the bed…
   …in bed…

   1a He is on the bed.
   1b He is in the bed.

2. Yes, it’s an old photo of my family.
   …solve…

   2a A: What’s this? Is this a picture of Xiaqong Monastery? 他们这张照片是大清古寺吗?
   B: Yes, it is. 他们在大清古寺.
   A: What’s that? 这是什么?
   B: Oh, it’s an old picture of this monastery a long time ago. 都是很久以前的旧照片.
   A: They’re quite different. Look, in the old picture the buildings are very nice and vivid. 但新旧照片差别很大.
   B: Yes, it’s true. 他们在大清古寺.

3. Solve this puzzle. …solve…

   3a Solve this problem.
4 They look young! 他们看起来很年轻！

…look… 看起来

4a You look hungry. 你看起来很饿。

4b He looks drunk. 他看起来喝醉了。

4c You look fine. 你看起来很好。

5 When is Tibetan New Year? Tibetan New Year is February first. 汝楚年是哪一年？汝楚年是二月

50
Unit 17
Could you help me, please?

Dialogue
Lhomotso: Good morning, Losang.
Losang: Good morning, Lhomotso.
Lhomotso: I have to herd the yaks on the mountain, but there are so many. Could you help me, please?
Losang: Certainly, I’d like to.
Lhomotso: Thanks, Losang.
Losang: You’re welcome. I’m happy to go with you. Let’s be off.

Text Explanation

1 Could you help me, please? डिग्नेटरीआर्स डिग्नेटरीआर्स
   1a Could you help me roast this sack of barley, please? डिग्नेटरीआर्स डिग्नेटरीआर्स
   1b Could you help me fetch some firewood? डिग्नेटरीआर्स डिग्नेटरीआर्स
   1c Could you help me give this letter to her? डिग्नेटरीआर्स डिग्नेटरीआर्स

2 Certainly. जीसाबु
   2a Certainly, I’d like to. जीसाबु जीसाबु
   2b Certainly, let me help you. जीसाबु जीसाबु
   2c Certainly, it would be my pleasure. जीसाबु जीसाबु

3 You’re welcome. [You’re / You are] जीसाबु जीसाबु
**Grammar**

1 Adjectives

1a Dondrup’s home is far.  ཨེད་དུ་འཕེན་བྱུང་དེ་རིང་

1b Cumu’s home is near.  སྗེས་ཇི་ཨེད་དེ་རིང་

1c He is happy.  སྐྱིད་གསང་

1d She is sad.  སེམས་སོགས

1e Two people are few.  ནིང་གི་ཉེ་བོད་

1f Twenty people are many.  ནིང་བོད་དཔེ་

1g A horse is a big animal.  དཀོན་མཆོག་གཅིག་གཅིག་

1h An ant is a small animal.  དཀོན་མཆོག་གཅིག་གནོན་ཀེ་

1i This sack is full.  སྐོར་བརྡ་དབང་

1j That sack is empty.  སྐོར་དབང་།

1k The full sack is heavy.  སྐོར་དབང་གི་ཐུབ་

1l The empty sack is light.  སྐོར་དབང་གི་ཐའུ་
Unit 18 Look after your things!

Dialogue

Doma: Could you help me, Dorji?

Dorji: Certainly. What’s wrong?

Doma: I missed three goats down in the gully. It’s getting dark now. I’m afraid to go there alone.

Dorji: Don’t worry. I can help you. Let’s go together.

Doma: Thank you very much.

Dorji: Nevermind. Let’s be off now.

Text Explanation

1 What’s wrong?  ར་གཅིག་ལུང་པོར།
   1a What’s wrong with the horse?  ར་གཅིག་ལུང་པོར།
   1b What’s wrong with your lover?  ར་གཅིག་ལུང་པོར།
   1c What’s wrong with her / him / you / them / it? ར་གཅིག / ༽བ / རུང་ཐད / ༽ོང / ར་གཅིག་ལུང་པོར།

2 I am afraid (be afraid of...) ར་གཅིག་(...བཞི་བཞི་)
   2a I am afraid of ghosts. ར་གཅིག་བཞི་བཞི།
   2b I am afraid of snakes. ར་གཅིག་བཞི་བཞི།
   2c I am afraid to go to such a dangerous place. ར་གཅིག་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་

3 Don’t worry. ར་གཅིག་
   3a Don’t worry about that. ར་གཅིག་
   3b Don’t worry about me. ར་གཅིག་
   3c Don’t worry about this matter. ར་གཅིག་
### Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, they, we, she, he, it</td>
<td>me, you, them, us, her, him, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m a student.</td>
<td>Please help me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’re American.</td>
<td>Can I help you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They’re poor.</td>
<td>Let’s help them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’re farmers.</td>
<td>Can you help us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s Tibetan.</td>
<td>I want to talk to her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s English.</td>
<td>Please believe him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s a cat.</td>
<td>Can you catch it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 19 Food and drink

Dialogue

Yongtso: Hello, Renchin! How are you today? 🦊

Renchin: Fine, thanks. And you? 🦊

Yongtso: I’m fine too. Would you like something to drink? What about a cup of milk tea? 🦊

Renchin: OK. What about you, Yongtso? 🦊

Yongtso: I’d like a cup of cold water. What about something to eat? 🦊

Renchin: Some tsamba, please. 🦊

Yongtso: Here it is, help yourself. 🦊

Renchin: Thanks. 🦊

Yongtso: Nevermind. 🦊

Text Explanation

1 Would you like...? 🦊

1a Would you like some tea? 🦊 No, thanks. 🦊

1b Would you like mutton or pork? 🦊 Either will be fine, madam. 🦊

2 What would you like? 🦊

2a What would you like to eat, mutton or beef? 🦊 I’d like some mutton, please. 🦊

2b What about some fruit? 🦊 OK, I’d like some apples. 🦊
Grammar

1 Articles: “a,” “an,” “the.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“a”</th>
<th>“an”</th>
<th>“the”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| a banana, a yak, a piece of bread, a box of matches | an apple, an ice-cream, an old man, an ugly face, and an eraser | an hour, an honest man, and an honour

1. She is a beautiful girl.
2. He is a handsome boy.
3. A monkey ate a banana.
4. An old man eats an ice-cream.
5. I have an eraser.
6. She has got an ugly face.
7. It’s an apple.
8. He works at a university.
9. It’s a usual job.
10. The meeting lasts an hour.
11. Kevin is an honourable teacher.
12. He is an honest man.

There is a tree. Under the tree there is an old man smoking a pipe.

a banana, a piece of bread, an orange

1. Some cakes, some eggs, some tsamba
2. Some bread, some rice, some meat

3 How many horses can you see?

3a I can see three.
3b I can see some.
3c I can’t see any.
Unit 20 Playing games

Dialogue

Huamo: Hello, Zhaxi, how are you doing? 嘿, 你好, 你好 Huamo?
Zhaxi: I’m OK, how about you? 我是好的, 你呢?
Huamo: Not bad. What’s that in your hand? 不错, 你在做什么?
Zhaxi: This is a kite. Can you fly a kite? 这是风筝, 你会放风筝吗?
Huamo: Let me try. Like this? 让我试试, 就这样?
Zhaxi: This is a kite. Can you fly a kite?
Huamo: No, don’t fly it like that. Fly it like this. 好的, 就这样.

Text Explanation

1 How are you? I am OK / not bad. 你好吗? 我很好 / 不错
   1a How is Lhomo? She’s great / fine. 那么, 她好。

2 Can you do...? 你会...?
   2a Can you ride a horse? 你会骑马吗?
       Yes, I can. 是的, 我会。

3 Don’t do it like that. 不要用那样方式。
   3a Don’t speak like that, please speak slowly. 不要用那样方式, 请慢慢说。
   3b Don’t eat like that, please eat like this. 不要用那样方式, 请这样吃。

4 How many children are there? 我们有几个孩子?
   There are no children / none. 没有孩子。
   There is only one child. 只有一个。
   4a How many yaks does your family have? 你们家有几头牦牛?
       Our family has thirty yaks. 我们家有三十头牦牛。
4b Are there any wolves in this place? རྩི་ཉིད་བཞི་ཡིན བཞིན་ས་

Yes, there are some. རྩི་ཉིད་བཞི་ཡིན་མིན་ནོ།

4c How many Tibetan Buddhist sects are there? ཞིབ་སྐྱོང་ཆུབ་སོགས་ཐོག་པའི་སྒྲོམ་པ་དང་སེམས་དཔོན་
There are mainly four sects. རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་

**Grammar རང་ཙམ་གནང་དུ་**

“*There + be*”ཤིག་བཅོས་ཐོག་པའི་ཐོག་པ་གཞན་ཐོག་པའི་རྣམ་ཐོག་པ་

a. There is a map of Tibet on the wall. རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་

b. There are three keys in her pocket. མཁྱེན་པོ་མཁྱེན་པོ་ཐོག་པ་དང་སེམས་དཔོན་

c. There is nothing in the box. རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་

| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| one/a yak | two yaks
| one/a pen | some pens
| one/a rabbit | three rabbits
| one/a house | four houses
| baby | babies
| city | cities
| boy | boys
| key | keys
| wife | wives
| thief | thieves
| dish | dishes
| match | matches
| class | classes
| box | boxes
| tomato | tomatoes
| potato | potatoes
| zoo | zoos
| radio | radios

| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
| རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་ | རྩེ་བ་ཐོན་དང་པོ་ལེགས་
---|---
Unit 21 What are you doing?

Dialogue

Sonam: Hello, Uncle Dunba, where are you going?  རྟོལ་ ཉི་དེ་བཞིན་པ་ ཡོད་ཏེ་རེད་བཞིན་པ་

Uncle Dunba: I’m going to watch sheep on the mountain. How about you?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་དེ་རེད་བཞིན་པ་

Sonam: I’m going to visit Drongker. Is she at home?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་དེ་རེད་བཞིན་པ་

Uncle Dunba: Yes, she is at home.  ཉིན་ཞིག་བཞིན་པ་

Sonam: What is she doing at home?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

Uncle Dunba: Her grandmother is telling her the story of Gesar.  ཉིན་དཔིན་ཆོས་

Sonam: Oh, I’d like to hear that. It’s getting late, I must hurry. See you.  ཉིན་དཔིན་ཆོས་

Uncle Dunba: See you later.  ཉིན་ཆོས་

Text Explanation

1 Where are you going?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

I’m going home.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

1a Where is Lhamo going?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

She is going to the hospital.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

1b Where are the monks going?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

They are going to the temple.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

2 What are they doing?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

They are going to school.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

2a Losang is listening to some music.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

2b Huadan is playing with a girl.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

2c Cumu is drawing some pictures.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

3 Are they at home?  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

3a Yangjian is at home.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

3b Yondan is not at home.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

3c Danzen is in the mountains.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་

3d Lhomotso is in her bed, listening to the radio.  རྟོལ་སྦེར་བཞིན་པ་
**Grammar**

**“Present Continuous Tense”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Predicate Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>dancing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She /He</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>singing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duden</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>studying.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Continuous Tense (question form).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Predicate Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you / we</td>
<td>smoking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>he / she</td>
<td>talking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Duden</td>
<td>coming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>moving?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 22 Let’s go to school today!

Useful Expressions

The days of the week.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
<th>Saturday</th>
<th>Sunday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>སྦབས་པ་</td>
<td>སངས་སེམས་</td>
<td>སངས་སེམས་</td>
<td>སངས་སེམས་</td>
<td>སངས་སེམས་</td>
<td>སངས་སེམས་</td>
<td>སངས་པ་</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1aA: What day is (it) tomorrow? གྷངས་སེམས་

B: It’s Tuesday. གྷངས་སེམས་

1b Cumu: Hi, Danzen! What day is it today? ཆུ་ལུང་དེ་ནི། རིག་པ་

Danzen: Today is Sunday. རིག་པ་

Cumu: Oh, let’s go to the park. རིག་པ་

Danzen: OK, let’s go. རིག་པ་

1c Dorji: Hey, Dawa! Do you have an eraser? ངེ་བུ་དེ་ནི། རིག་པ་

Dawa: Yes, I do. But it’s not good. ངེ་ནི། རིག་པ་

Dorji: That’s OK. Can I borrow it? ངེ་བུ་དེ་ནི། རིག་པ་

Dawa: Certainly! But give it back soon. ངེ་ནི། རིག་པ་

Dorji: OK! Thanks very much. ངེ་ནི། རིག་པ་

Dawa: Nevermind. ངེ་ནི། རིག་པ་

Text Explanation

I What day is it today / tomorrow? རིག་པ་/ རིག་པ་

It’s Wednesday. རིག་པ་

It’s Thursday. རིག་པ་

1a What are you going to do on Friday? རིག་པ་

I am going to have a date with my girlfriend on Friday afternoon. རིག་པ་

1b What is he going to do on Sunday? རིག་པ་

He is going to visit his dear teacher on Sunday. རིག་པ་
2 Can I borrow your…? 갤러리디…가환간

2a Can I borrow your ruler / pencil / eraser? 갤러리디힐 / 삐촉 / 갤러리디가환간

Certainly / Sure / Of course.  것카importe

2b Can I borrow some money from her? 갤러리디피안랄산수있는/she does have any money.

No, you can’t. She doesn’t have any money. 她doesn’t have any money.

Grammar 갈러리디에관한

Possessive Pronouns 갈러리디에관한

1 갈러리디에관한

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>My</th>
<th>Your</th>
<th>His</th>
<th>Our</th>
<th>Her</th>
<th>Their</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This is my book.</td>
<td>Is this your hat?</td>
<td>These are his shoes.</td>
<td>Is this our classroom?</td>
<td>Are these her pencil boxes?</td>
<td>Are those their cars?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 갈러리디에관한

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mine</th>
<th>This is mine.</th>
<th>Yours</th>
<th>Is this yours?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>His</td>
<td>These are his.</td>
<td>Hers</td>
<td>Are these hers?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ours</td>
<td>It’s ours.</td>
<td>Theirs</td>
<td>These are theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you / we / I / they / the students have some money? Yes, you / we / I / they / the students do. No, you / we / I / they don’t.

Does she / he / Cairang have any English books? Yes, she / he / Cairang does. No, she / he / Cairang doesn’t.
Unit 23 Where are you from?

Dialogue

Lodan: Excuse me! Where are you from? དོན་དོན་དབང་དགུ་མི་འཛིན་གཞི་སོགས།
Kevin: I’m from America, how about you? Are you from Xunhua? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Lodan: No, I’m not from Xunhua. I’m from Jiansha. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Kevin: Are you a student? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Lodan: Yes, I am a student in Malho Normal School. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Kevin: Oh, how is your written Tibetan? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Lodan: Just so-so. Do you speak Tibetan? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Kevin: Only a little. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Lodan: Do you like Tibetan places? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Kevin: Of course. Very much. They are great! བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Lodan: What do you like about Tibetan places? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Kevin: I like the scenery, the people, customs, and so on. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Lodan: OK! Thank you for talking to me. I’ll visit you someday. See you later! བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
Kevin: See you soon! བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།

Text Explanation

1 Where are you from? / Where do you come from? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
   I’m from Ganzi. / I come from Ganzi. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།

2 Are you a farmer? No, I’m not. I’m a teacher. / I am a graduate student. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།

3 Do you speak English? Yes, I do. / No, I don’t. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
   3a Does he speak Tibetan? བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
      No, he doesn’t. He only speaks English. བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས། བོད་ཚུལ་སྣགས་ཚིགས།
4 What do you like about the book?

I like the sentences and the pictures.

Grammar

The present Indefinite Tense

“Where” “When” “what” এই সময়ে “Be, do” এই সময়ে “Where” “When” “what” এই সময়ে

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ইংরেজি</th>
<th>বাংলা</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where is Kumbum Monastery?</td>
<td>Kumbum is in Huangzhong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are the students?</td>
<td>The students are in the classroom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When is your birthday?</td>
<td>My birthday is on July 3rd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is her name?</td>
<td>Her name is Sally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When does Danba study?</td>
<td>He studies in the mornings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time does the bus leave?</td>
<td>The bus leaves at twelve o’clock.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 24 What do you like?

Dialogue

Nyingkar: What do you like (eating), Pencu? นั้นคุณชอบอะไรกิน
Pencu: I like beef the most (a lot). I don’t like fish and I like fruits a little.

Nyingkar: What about your mother? Does she like fish? นั้นคุณแม่ชอบอะไร
Pencu: No, she doesn’t. She doesn’t like fish at all. She likes candy and fruits a lot and she likes potatoes too. What about you?

Nyingkar: I like butter, milk tea, and yoghurt. Also, I like smoking tobacco. It’s a simple pleasure for me.

Text Explanation

1 What do you like (eating)? นั้นคุณชอบอะไรกิน
I like (eating) mutton. I like tsamba.

2 What do you like (doing)? นั้นคุณชอบอะไรทำ
I like riding horses / yaks.
I like doing my homework.
I like being with my lover in the garden.

3 Does Uncle Dunba like making jokes?
Yes, he does. He likes making jokes.
No, he doesn’t like to. He doesn’t like making jokes.
He likes gambling.

Grammar

“Do” does

Do you speak English?
Yes, we/I do.
No, we/I don’t.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>have some money?</th>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>do/don’t.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>students</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Does she / he / Lhomotso speak English?
No, she / he / Lhomotso doesn’t speak English.
Yes, she / he / Lhomotso speaks English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Does</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>have any English books?</th>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>she / he / Cairang does.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairang</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

No, she / he / Cairang doesn’t.

Do you like cooking? Yes, I do. / No, I don’t.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do you like</th>
<th>herding yaks?</th>
<th>Yes, I do.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reading newspapers?</td>
<td>Yes, I do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singing love songs?</td>
<td>No, I don’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>riding horses?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 25 People and work

Dialogue

Gunchu: Good afternoon! Mr Peet, where are you from?
Mr Peet: I’m from America.
Gunchu: What do you do?
Mr Peet: I am an English teacher.
Gunchu: Where do you work / teach?
Mr Peet: I work / teach in Jiantsa Nationalities Middle School.
Gunchu: Do you speak Tibetan?
Mr Peet: A little. I go to Tibetan classes every day.
Gunchu: Great! Do you like working in Jiantsa?
Mr Peet: Yes, I do. The weather is so fine in Jiantsa and the people here are so friendly.
Gunchu: Do you have any children?
Mr Peet: Yes, I do. I have two, a son and a daughter.
Gunchu: Are they with you here?
Mr Peet: Yes, they are.
Gunchu: What do they do?
Mr Peet: They are students in the Second Primary School.

Text Explanation

1 What do you do?
   I’m a teacher / farmer / worker.
1a What does he do?
   He’s a soldier / driver / student.
2 Where do you work?
   I work in a factory / school.
2a Where does your father work?
   He works in a farm / in a shop.
3 Good morning! གོ་བསྒྲུབ་བཞི།
3a Good afternoon! གོ་དུས་བཞི།
3b Good evening! གོ་དོན་བཞི།

Grammar རྣམས་བཞི།

1a Do you go to school everyday?
   Yes, I go to school everyday.
   No, I don’t go to school everyday.

1b Does the teacher come to class everyday?
   Yes, he comes to class everyday.
   No, he doesn’t come to class everyday.

1c Are you watching TV right now?
   Yes, I am watching TV right now.
   No, I am not watching TV right now.

1d Is your mother cooking right now?
   Yes, she is cooking right now.
   No, she is not cooking right now.
Unit 26 What time do you get up?

Useful Expressions

1 What time is it? 
   1a It’s nine-thirty / It’s half past nine. ๗๗๗่๗
   1b It’s nine o’clock. ๗๗๗
   1c It’s quarter past nine. ๗๗๗่๗๗
   1d It’s five to nine. ๗๗๗่๗๗

2 A: What time do you go to bed? ๗๗๗่๗
   B: I go to bed at ten. ๗๗

3 A: What time do you get up? ๗๗
   B: I get up at six-thirty. ๗๗

4 A: What time do you have breakfast? ๗๗
   B: I have breakfast at seven-thirty. ๗๗

5 A: What time do you go to school? ๗๗
   B: I go to school at eight o’clock. ๗๗

Text Explanation

1 It’s time to...!...这个时代!...๗๗
   1a A: What time is it? ๗๗
      B: It’s two o’clock. ๗๗
         A: Oh, it’s time to go to class. ๗๗
         B: OK, let’s go. ๗๗

2 What time (when) do you...? ๗๗
   2a I visit my grandmother on weekends. ๗๗
   2b I have breakfast at seven-thirty in the morning. ๗๗
   2c I have supper in the evening. ๗๗
   2d I study Tibetan during summer vacations. ๗๗
3 I often do... but sometimes I....

3a I often read books, but sometimes I listen to music.

3b I often ride horses, but sometimes I ride male yaks.

Grammar

Time Expression

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past གཞན་</th>
<th>Present སྤེན་</th>
<th>Future མ་ཞིས་</th>
<th>Future མ་ཞིས་</th>
<th>Future མ་ཞིས་</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yesterday གཞན་</td>
<td>Today སྤེན་</td>
<td>Tomorrow མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Tomorrow མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Tomorrow མ་ཞིས་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last week / month / year གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>This week / month / year གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Next week / month / year གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Next week / month / year གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Next week / month / year གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Monday གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>This Monday གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Next Monday གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Next Monday གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Next Monday གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five minutes ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>Now གཞན་</td>
<td>In five minutes གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>In five minutes གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
<td>In five minutes གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After five minutes གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Long ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Long ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Long ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Long ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ |

Once upon a time གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | A long time ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | A long time ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | A long time ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | A long time ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ |

In ancient time(s) གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Many years ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Many years ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Many years ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ | Many years ago གཞན་ / སྤེན་ / མ་ཞིས་ |
Dialogue

1 Yangjian: What does Gensang do?

Caihua: He’s a teacher.

Yangjian: Is he teaching now?

Caihua: No, he isn’t. He is shopping.

Yangjian: Oh, I want to buy a nice gift for my mother’s birthday.

2 Tarlu: Good morning! Can I help you, Uncle Nymka?

Uncle Nymka: Yes, please. I want some meat.

Tarlu: OK, how much do you want?

Uncle Nymka: One and a half kilos, please.

Tarlu: Here you are.

Uncle Nymka: How much is it?

Tarlu: Fifteen rmb, please.

Uncle Nymka: Thank you.

Text Explanation

1 What do you want to buy?

I want to buy some clothes.

I want to buy a pack of cigarettes.

2 A: How much is this shirt?

B: Twenty yuan, please.

A: Oh, it’s too expensive.

B: No, it’s not expensive. It’s cheap.

3 A: How much meat do you want?

B: (I want) One kilo, please.
Grammar

1 Countable nouns

Countable nouns are denoted by a number followed by the article "a"/"one" or the possessive "my"/"your"/"his"/"her"/"its"/"our"/"their".

1a How many apples / pens / books do you want?
   I want ten apples / pens / books, please!
   I want some apples / pens / books, please.

1b How many books do you want?
   I want a / one book / two books / some books / a lot of books / a few books / many books.

2 Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns are denoted by the article "a"/"one" or the possessive "my"/"your"/"his"/"her"/"its"/"our"/"their".

2a How much bread / meat / butter do you want?
   I want a piece of bread / meat / butter.

2b How much money do you want?
   I want some / a lot of / much / a little money.

3 Miscellaneous

advice   furniture   help   homework   information   jewellery   luck
money    mail       music   peace   traffic   weather   work
bread    cheese     coffee  food    fruit      milk      pepper
rice     salt       soup    sugar    tea       water

3a I want some bread / meat / butter, please.
3b How much bread / meat / butter do you want?
Students’ Book 2A

Students’ Book 2A

Students’ Book 2A

Students’ Book 2A

Students’ Book 2A
Unit 1 Welcome back!

Text Explanation

1 Good morning, Sir.

2 Welcome back to school!

3 May I come in, please?

4 It doesn’t matter.

Grammar

1 This is our first lesson, so I don’t know your names.

2 He isn’t hungry, so he doesn’t want anything to eat.

3 He isn’t a Tibetan, so he doesn’t know one word of Tibetan.

4 You are a student, so you have to finish your homework.

5 Is he from Lhasa?

6 Can you tell me where I can find a restaurant?

7 I don’t think so.
2 Please study these uncountable words below.

2a I have your names on this piece of paper.
2b I would like to drink a cup of tea.
2c Could you pour me a glass of tea?
2d I bought a pair of shoes in the supermarket.
2e He broke two bottles of beer.
2f May I have a bowl of rice?
2g May I borrow your basketball, please?

3a Sorry, I didn’t finish my homework.
3b You are much more beautiful since we last met.
3c The garden looks better after you weeded it.
3d This piece of paper is bigger than that one.
3e Going by air is more expensive than going by bus.

3 I’m sorry I’m late.

It doesn’t matter this time, but come to school earlier next time.

“sorry” or “I’m sorry”

3a Sorry, I didn’t finish my homework.

4 A long ruler
A short ruler
A tall boy
A short boy
A big piece of paper
A small piece of paper

4a This ruler is longer than that one.
4b You are taller than him.
4c This piece of paper is bigger than that one.
4d Tibetan education is more available than before.
4e Going by air is more expensive than going by bus.

5 Making comparisons in sentences without using “than.”

5a The garden looks better after you weeded it.
5b You are much more beautiful since we last met.
6 The present continuous tense

"is (am, are) + verb + ing"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I am reading.    | आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
| I am not reading.| आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
| You are reading. | आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
| You aren’t reading.| आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
| He / She is reading. | आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
| He / She is not reading. | आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
| We / You / They are reading. | आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
| We / You / They are not reading | आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।

6a Lhamo is flying a kite. ल्हामो लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
6b He is having a bath. आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
6c The population of the world is rising very fast. आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
6d You are going to the teacher’s office, aren’t you? आधुनिकता लुम्वालै चिकित्सा ।
Unit 2 How you get to school

Text Explanation

1 A: What can you see in the picture?

B: I can see a sun and a moon.

- **could**

A: How many students are in your class?

B: There are thirty students in my class.

- **can**

2 A: How many ships can you see?

B: I can see two ships.

- **can**

**Grammar**

The Present Indefinite Tense

1) How do you usually go to school?

b) I usually walk to school, but I sometimes go by bus.

1a How does she come to school?

She usually comes to school by bike.
2 Practice answering these questions.

2a Do you often eat with chopsticks?

Yes, I often eat with chopsticks.

No, I don’t often eat with chopsticks.

2b What does she often use to eat?

She often uses a spoon, fork, and knife to eat.

2c When does he usually get up?

He usually gets up at six clock.
Useful Expressions

A: Would you like to taste a mooncake?

B: Yes, please give me a big one.

A: Is this one big enough?

B: No, sorry. It’s too big, please give me one that is smaller than this.

A: OK, is this right?

B: Yes, thank you very much.

A: No problem.

Grammar

1 Comparison of adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>གསྲ་བའི་སྐད།</th>
<th>ཐེག་ཆེན་བའི་སྐད།</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>er / est</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>smaller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er / est</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er / est</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y-ier / iest</td>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>heavier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>གསུང་སོང་མིག གསུང་སོང་གི་མིག</td>
<td>careful</td>
<td>more careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>གསུང་སོང་མིག གང་ཐོབ་</td>
<td>some apples</td>
<td>more apples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>གསུང་སོང་མིག གང་ཐོབ་</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>more dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>གསུང་སོང་གི་མིག</td>
<td>many, much</td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>གསུང་སོང་གི་མིག</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>གསུང་སོང་གི་མིག</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Life was harder than it is today.

2a Life was harder than it is today.

2b She is older than me.

2c The temperature is becoming higher and higher.

2d Zhaxi is taller than Yondan.

2e There are more kinds of mooncakes here as compared to other shops.

2f Going by train is faster than by bus.

3 She is the oldest among us.

3a She is the oldest among us.

3b In our room he gets up (the) earliest.

3c The tallest student in our class is Zhaxi.
Unit 4 We’re going to work on a farm

Dialogue

A: What are you going to do next week?
B: Nothing much, why?
A: We’re going to work on a farm. Don’t you know?
B: Good idea! It’s much better than having class?
A: Sure, don’t be late. Oh! And put on your old clothes.
B: OK. Listen, that’s the bell. It’s time for class.

Grammar

1 “Be going to”

Tracks “be going to” sigue como un verbo de la segunda conjugación. La forma “be” se usa en el presente de indicativo como “is, am, are”. 

(a) Where are they going to meet?
(b) When is she going to visit that monastery?
(c) What are you going to be in the future?

1a She is going to visit that monastery on Sunday.
1b She is going to visit that monastery.
1c I am going to be a scientist.
Unit 5 Working hard on the farm

Useful Expressions

1. Dodben has some tomatoes. Zhaxi has more tomatoes than Lodan. Yondan has the most of all.
2. The first horse is carrying a few things. The second one is carrying fewer than the first. The third one is carrying the fewest of all.

Grammar

1. "-er" र "-est" पुस्तकीय
   - छोटा छोटा छोटे
   - छोटा छोटे छोटे
   - सबसे छोटा
2. "-e" लिखित "-er" र "-est" पुस्तकीय
   - बड़ा बड़ा बड़े
   - बड़ा बड़े बड़े
   - सबसे बड़ा
3. "-i" लिखित "-er" र "-est" पुस्तकीय
   - धूला धूली धूली
   - धूली धूली धूली
   - सबसे धूली
4. "-y" लिखित "-er" र "-est" पुस्तकीय
   - मुश्किल मुश्किल मुश्किल
   - मुश्किल मुश्किल मुश्किल
   - सबसे मुश्किल
5. "-more" र "-most" पुस्तकीय
   - सफल सफल सबसे सफल
   - सफल सफल सबसे सफल


Lesson 19 Working on a farm

It’s a fine day today, and everyone is busy. They are working hard on the farm. The children are picking apples. Look! There’s Meimei! She’s very strong. She’s lifting that ladder. Now she’s holding it for Jim. Jim is climbing up the ladder. He’s picking the apples on that tree. He’s putting them in a basket. Some of the apples are hard to reach. They are too high. Be careful, Jim! It’s dangerous. Oh, good! He’s coming down the ladder, now.

“You don’t have any apples, Jim,” says Li Lei. “I have more than you.”

“Do I have fewer apples than you? Let me see!” says Jim.

Jim looks at Li Lei’s apples. “Oh!” he says. “Yes, you have more than me. But mine are better than yours. Look! Yours are green, and quite small. Mine are red, and they’re much bigger!”

Translation of Lesson 19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>better</th>
<th>best</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many (much)</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 6 Shall we go to the park?

Useful Expressions

1 A: Would you like to come to supper?  རྫུང་བོར་བཤད་མེད་པོ་ལ།

B: Oh! Thank you, I would love to. But I must ask my parents first. What time shall I come?  ་། དུས་པ་

A: We have our evening meal at about a quarter past six. Why don’t you come a little earlier?  རྫུང་བོར་བཤད་མེད་པོ་ལ།

B: OK. Sure, see you.  རྫུང་བོར་བཤད་པོ་དེ་ཁུལ་འདེབས་པ་ལ།

A: Bye! རྫུང་བོར་བཤད་པོ་དེ་ཁུལ་འདེབས་པ་ལ།

2 A: Which is the biggest bird in Tibetan areas?  རང་གུང་བོད་ཇི་ཐེན་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

B: The biggest bird in Tibetan areas is the eagle.  རང་གུང་བོད་ཇི་ཐེན་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

2a A: Which animal does our life depend on at our home?  རང་ཐིབ་ལུགས་དུ་འགྲོ་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

B: The yak is the animal that our lives depend on.  རང་ཐིབ་ལུགས་དུ་འགྲོ་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

2b A: Which animal do you like best?  རང་ཐིབ་ལུགས་དུ་འགྲོ་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

B: I like sheep best.  རང་ཐིབ་ལུགས་དུ་འགྲོ་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

2c A: What does a cat look like?  རང་ཐིབ་ལུགས་དུ་འགྲོ་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

B: A cat looks like a small leopard.  རང་ཐིབ་ལུགས་དུ་འགྲོ་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

Grammar

1 would you like-“would”ལོ་བོད་ཙམ་ལྭ་ལ་འཐོང་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ། མི་ལྟར་བཏོན་པའི་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ། དུས་པའི་ཐབས་འཕྲིན་“would you like”པོ་ལ་འཐོང་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ། “What about”ལོ་བོད་ཙམ་ལྭ་ལ་འཐོང་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ། རེད་ལུང་། I am going. What about you? རང་ཐིབ་ལུགས་དུ་འགྲོ་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

1a Shall we_____? རྫུང་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

Shall we go at ten? རྫུང་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

1b Why not_____? རྫུང་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།

Why not go at ten? རྫུང་བཤད་པོ་ལ་ཐོབས་གཞི་མི་ཤེས་ལ་ལ།
2 “Let’s”  "Let us"  “We’ll”
2a Let’s go at ten!  นี่จะส่งผลต่อคุณอย่างมาก

3 “What about”  "What about?"
3a What about seven?  นี่จะส่งผลต่อคุณอย่างมาก

4 Would you like....  "Would you like?"
4a Would you like to go at ten?  นี่จะส่งผลต่อคุณอย่างมาก

*86*
Useful Expressions

1 A: What time is it? 
   B: It is a quarter past ten.

1a A: What time are we leaving tomorrow? 
   B: Tomorrow we are leaving at twenty minutes past five.

1b A: When are you going to start class? 
   B: I am going to start class this afternoon at three-thirty.

1c A: Could you please tell me what time the bank is open? 
   B: Certainly, the bank is open at two-thirty.

2 A: Shall we play tennis tomorrow at two pm? 
   B: What about four o’clock?

2a Be careful! That dog is trying to bite you.

2b Look out! They are pouring water from their window.

2c Don’t jump into that river, it’s too dangerous.

2d Be careful! That ladder is broken.

3 A: What time are we leaving tomorrow? 
   B: It is a quarter past ten.

3a Be careful! That dog is trying to bite you.

3b Look out! They are pouring water from their window.

3c Don’t jump into that river, it’s too dangerous.

3d Be careful! That ladder is broken.
Grammar

The phrase "to" is used with the verb "to be" in the present tense, while "past" is used with the verb "to be" in the past tense. For example:

- "twenty minutes past nine" (past tense)
- "a quarter to three" (future tense)

These phrases indicate time in English.
Unit 8 Where do you sit?

Lesson 31 Who has the eraser?

Children often love to play this game. They play it like this: six students stand in a row in front of the class. They put their hands behind their backs, so you can’t see their hands. The teacher gives one of them an eraser. The eraser goes from one student to another first one way, then another. They must keep their hands behind their backs. The other students in the class keep their eyes closed. They mustn’t look.

Then the teacher says: “Stop and put your hands in front of you now.”

The six students put their hands in front of them. Now the other students open their eyes, and guess who has the eraser. They ask questions like “Li Lei, is it in your right hand?”

They can have only five guesses.

Translation of Lesson 31

The six students put their hands in front of them. Now the other students open their eyes, and guess who has the eraser. They ask questions like “Li Lei, is it in your right hand?”

They can have only five guesses.
### Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>in</strong></td>
<td>समेत</td>
<td>There is a glove in my desk.</td>
<td>समेत िल्को डेस्कमा डाल्नेछ।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on</strong></td>
<td>राइन</td>
<td>The snow flower is on the mountain</td>
<td>राइन िल्को पहाडमा फुलाहरू रहेको छ।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>under</strong></td>
<td>नीवा</td>
<td>We are under the sky.</td>
<td>नीवा रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>at</strong></td>
<td>रङ्ग</td>
<td>She’s at home. I will leave at six o’clock.</td>
<td>रङ्ग रहेको हो। ही रोजमर्रा छाईमा छाईमा छ।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>near</strong></td>
<td>अण्डकाम</td>
<td>Near my home there is a lake.</td>
<td>अण्डकाम नै घरमा तिलक लक।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inside</strong></td>
<td>समेत</td>
<td>I went inside a supermarket.</td>
<td>समेत िल्को वाचामा यात्रा गर्नेछ।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>outside</strong></td>
<td>िल्का</td>
<td>We meet outside of the school gate.</td>
<td>िल्का रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>behind</strong></td>
<td>तक्कुल</td>
<td>The classroom is behind the library.</td>
<td>तक्कुल रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>in font of</strong></td>
<td>आङ्गनै</td>
<td>The bus stop is in front of the toilet.</td>
<td>आङ्गनै बसस्टोप रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on the left</strong></td>
<td>छोरों</td>
<td>The bookshop is left of the garden.</td>
<td>छोरों िल्को गार्डनमा फूलो हो।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>in the middle of</strong></td>
<td>तित्तरै</td>
<td>Ziling is in the middle of China.</td>
<td>तित्तरै चीनमध्ये रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on the top of</strong></td>
<td>तेस्रो</td>
<td>Tibet is on the top of the world.</td>
<td>तेस्रो यिब्तेस्तोतप्त िल्को विश्वमा रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>at the back of</strong></td>
<td>त्प्रेम</td>
<td>The factory is at the back of the airport.</td>
<td>त्प्रेम िल्को वाटका रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on the right of</strong></td>
<td>सागको</td>
<td>People’s Park is on the right of the fruit shop.</td>
<td>सागको िल्को फ्रूट खान्दा रहेको हो।</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 9 Find the right place

Dialogue

1 A: Excuse me, is there a post office near here? 
B: Yes, there is. Walk along this road, and take the fourth turn on the left.
A: Thank you very much. 
B: Not at all. / You’re welcome.

2 A: Excuse me, is there a police station near here? 
B: No, there isn’t. The nearest is about 4 kilometres away. So you’d better catch a bus.
A: Which number do I need, please? 
B: I think you need number two. The bus stop is along that road, on the right.

3 A: Excuse me, is there a toilet near here? 
B: I’m sorry I don’t know. You’d better ask that policeman over there. 
A: Thank you all the same. 

Grammar

1 Expressing needs

1a He needs some help. 
1b You need Bus Number 47. 
1c What is the number of the bus I need?

2 Asking for directions

2a Is there a station near here? 
2b Where’s the nearest hospital, please?
3 Giving directions

3a Go along this road.
3b Take the first right turn.
3c It’s outside / next to / in front of...
3d It’s about a hundred meters on the left.
3e It’s about six kilometres away.

4 Practice how to make sentences with these phrases.

look for She’s looking for a job.
look at Meduk looks at her reading book.
look after Children have to look after their parents when they are aged.
look out of In the morning, I often look out of the window to see the sun.
look like His nose looks like a bird flying.
look the same They look the same.
look worried She looks very worried about her study.
look over The teacher looked over the students’ homework.
Lesson 39 John’s Day

John is Canadian. He lives in a tall building in the city of Toronto. There are eighteen floors in the building, and he lives on the fifteenth floor. He uses a lift to go up and down.

John works very hard. He goes to work early. Every day he leaves his home and walks to the lift. He gets into the lift. It takes him down to the first floor.

He gets out of the lift. Then he walks to a bus stop. The bus stop is in front of a station. It is about two hundred metres from his home.

Usually, he catches the number 11 bus to work, but sometimes he goes by train. John works in a factory about ten kilometres from his home. His work starts at half past eight, and finishes at a quarter to five. He gets back home at a quarter past five. He gets into the lift, and goes up to the twelfth floor. Then he gets out of the lift and climbs up to the fifteenth floor on foot.

Every day he does the same thing. Why doesn’t he use the lift for the last three floors?

Translation of Lesson 39
Grammar

ธุรกิจ “Do”

1. ฉันชอบที่จะไปทำงานที่ร้านค้า “Do” ฉันอยากรู้ว่าวัยนี้ฉันจะทำงานอะไร “Does” ฉันจะทำงานอะไร
   “Does” ฉันจะไปทำงานที่ร้านค้า “Do” ฉันจะทำงานอะไร “Does” ฉันจะทำงานอะไร

1a. Does she like her work?  
   Yes, she does. / No, she doesn’t.
1b. Do you live in Ziling?  
   Yes, I do. / No, I don’t.

1c. I don’t like living on the 12th floor.
1d. He doesn’t use a computer.

2. What does she / he do?  “Does” ฉันจะทำงานอะไร “Does” ฉันจะทำงานอะไร
   “Does” ฉันจะทำงานอะไร “Does” ฉันจะทำงานอะไร

2a. I am a teacher. I work.
2b. He / She is a worker. He / She works.
2c. What do you / I do?  I am / You are a teacher. I work.

I write. You play.
Unit 11 Keep healthy

Dialogue

Teacher: Good morning, students.

Students: Good morning, Teacher.

Teacher: What day is it today?

Students: Today is Monday, November the twelfth.

Teacher: Who is away today?

Students: Lodan is away today.

Teacher: What’s wrong with him?

Students: He is a little ill today.

Teacher: Could you give him a message?

Students: Yes, sure.

Teacher: I hope he will be better soon.

Grammar

The Past Indefinite Tense

“am/is-was  are-were”形式

Statement forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Question forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was (not) at school last Friday.</td>
<td>Was I at school last Friday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You were (not) late yesterday.</td>
<td>Were you late yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She / He was early this morning.</td>
<td>Was she / he early this morning?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It was red.</td>
<td>Was it red?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We / you / they were away last October.</td>
<td>Were we / you / they away last October?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 12 Which is your favourite?

Dialogue

1 A: Which is your favourite month?  
B: I think May is the best month.

2 A: How many minutes are there in an hour?  
B: There are sixty minutes in an hour.

3 A: What day was yesterday?  
B: It was Wednesday, October 13th (thirteenth), 2000 (two thousand).

Grammar

The Past Indefinite

I / you / she / he / we / they had a good time on Sunday.

Did I / you / she / we / they have eggs for breakfast?

Yes, I / you / she / we / they had eggs for breakfast.

No, I / you / she / we / they had eggs for breakfast.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement forms</th>
<th>had a good time on Sunday.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question forms</td>
<td>did eggs for breakfast?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer forms</td>
<td>had eggs for breakfast.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dialogue

Dongrub: Hello, Meduk! May I ask you some questions?  ་ཐད་ གཞན་ རང་ཐུན་རྣམ་ཐུན་པར་བཤད་

Meduk: Certainly! གཟོད་

Dongrub: When were you born? གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Meduk: I was born on February 16, 1986.  གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས་པར་བཤད་

Dongrub: Where were you born? གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Meduk: I was born in Tibet—in a small town near Lhasa.  གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས་པར་བཤད་

Dongrub: How long did you live there? གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Meduk: We lived there for about five years.  གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Dongrub: Only five years? གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Meduk: Yes. Then my family moved to Amdo. གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Dongrub: Why did you move there? གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Meduk: Because my father found work in Ziling. གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Dongrub: Are you enjoying living there? གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Meduk: Yes, we are. Very much. གཞན་ཕྲ་བར་དུ་ལེགས

Lesson 51 Wei Hua’s busy day

Wei Hua had a busy day yesterday. She got up before 7 o’clock in the morning, and quickly washed her hands and face. She got to school early. She had a little rest after lunch, but she worked hard in class all day. She played basketball after school, and then walked home.

Wei Hua’s pen was broken, so she needed a new one. On her way home she bought a new pen at a shop. When she reached home, she had a short rest and a glass of water. After that she helped her parents. She quickly cooked the supper, and cleaned the house.

She watched TV for half an hour after supper. Then she started her homework. She finished it at half past nine. She went to bed before a quarter to ten.

I asked Wei Hua this question: “Do you enjoy work?”

“Yes, I do,” she answered. “I like to keep busy!”
Translation of Lesson 51

Translation of Lesson 51

Translation of Lesson 51

Translation of Lesson 51

Translation of Lesson 51

Translation of Lesson 51
Unit 14 Mainly revision

Dialogue

A: I want to buy some mutton. How much does it cost, please?
B: Eight yuan for a kilo.
A: That’s too much / too expensive / dear. / That’s quite cheap / inexpensive. Give me a kilo of mutton please.

Opposites

2a A: What is the opposite of “close?”
B: The opposite of “close” is “open.”

2b A: What is the opposite of “interesting?”
B: The opposite of “interesting” is “uninteresting.”

A short conversation in the bus

Conductor: Tickets, please. May I see your ticket please, madam?
Lady: Certainly. Here it is.
Conductor: Thank you, madam. Now, may I see yours, sir?
Man: I’m sorry, I can’t find it. I thought it was in my coat.
Conductor: Did you buy one, sir?
Man: Oh, yes, I bought one, but I can’t find it now.
Conductor: I hope you can find it. I’m coming back in a minute.
Students’ Book 2B
Unit 15 Thanks for the message

Useful Expressions

1. He is out at the moment.
2. Please ring him.
3. Can I take a message?
4. See you tomorrow.
5. I don’t think so.

Text Explanation

1. Zhaxi, could you answer the telephone, please?
   - This means: "Could I have a cup of butter tea, Mum?"
   - This means: "Could you give me that Tibetan-English dictionary, please?"

2. I’ll get it. (I will answer the telephone.)
   - This means: "I’ll get it. (I will answer the telephone.)"
   - “It” here means “the telephone.”

3. He is at the cinema.
   - This means: "He is at school / work / home.

4. Can I take a message?
   - This means: "Can I take a message?"
   - This means: "Cairang asked me to take a message for you."

5. The monitor asked you to sweep the floor.
   - This means: "The monitor asked you to sweep the floor.

6. A: Thank you for inviting me to your birthday party.
   - This means: "A: Thank you for the message.
   - B: It’s a pleasure.

6a. A. Thank you for answering my question.
   - This means: "A. Thank you for answering my question.
   - B: It’s a pleasure."
7 A: Do you remember we went to work on a farm last summer? 

Yes, I do.

8 There were many apples on the trees.

There is a sparrow in the tree.

There is a nice Tibetan knife in the box.

They needed to climb up the trees with ladders.

They needed to visit Tibetan areas with Tibetans.

They needed to kill the wolf with a gun.

Grammar

“There be (was were)”

“was” “were” “is” “are”

1a There was a meeting yesterday.

1b There was a Tibetan horse-race last summer.

1c There were many customers at the Tibetan restaurant yesterday.

1d There were many nice flowers on the Gangcha grasslands last summer.
Unit 16 The seasons of the year

Useful Expressions  །རུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ུང་།

1 It’s very cold today, isn’t it? །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་ུམ་པར་དེར་རེད།
   1a You are from Tibet, aren’t you? །ལུང་ངོ་ཤིང་ཤིང་མངོན་པར་དེར་རེད།

2 It’s very nice, isn’t it? །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་མངོན་པར་དེར་རེད།
   2a Zhaxi is an English teacher, isn’t he? །བཐོ་སོང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་བུ་ཤིང་རེད།
   2b Huadan is a herdsman, isn’t he? །ཧུ་དན་ཤིང་ཤིང་བུ་ཤིང་རེད།

Text Explanation །རིལ་ཆེན་དགོངས་འེལ་།

1 Everything begins to grow in spring. །དུས་པ་བཞི་ལུགས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   1a Are the flowers beautiful in winter? །ལུགས་པ་བཞི་ལུགས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   1b Are horses strong and fat in autumn in Qinghai? །ཤུ་སུའི་དུམ་ཐུབ་ཤུགས་པར་དེར་རེད།

2 Winter is from about November to January. །གཤུགས་པ་བཞི་ལུགས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   2a I read Tibetan from seven to eight every morning. །འཁིད་ཤིང་ལུས་པ་བཞི་ལུགས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   2b It’s far from Beijing to Tibet. །བེіང་ཐུབ་པ་བཞི་ལུགས་པར་དེར་རེད།

3 Why don’t you take off your sweater? །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་གཤེགས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   3a Why don’t you herd livestock in the mountains? །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་གཤེགས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   3b Why don’t you want to go to Lhasa with Cairang? །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་གཤེགས་པར་དེར་རེད།

4 It’s very different from Australia at this time of year. །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་བཤེས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   4a City life is very different from countryside life. །ནང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་བཤེས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   4b This horse is different from that one. །དུས་པ་བཞི་ལུགས་པར་དེར་རེད།

5 Look at this letter from Meduk to her friend. །ཐུབ་དུན་ཤིང་ཤིང་བཤེས་པར་དེར་རེད།
   5a I want to travel from Qinghai to other Tibetan places. །འཁིད་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་པར་དེར་རེད།
   5b This river flows from India to Nepal. །འཁིད་ཤིང་ཤིང་བཤེས་པར་དེར་རེད།

6 Thank you for your letter. །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་ཤིང་འཐོབ་པར་དེར་རེད།
   6a Thank you for coming to see me. །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་འཐོབ་པར་དེར་རེད།
   6b Thank you for your help. །ཡུལ་ཐོབ་ཅིང་ཤིང་འཐོབ་པར་དེར་རེད་རེད།

•103•
7 The weather gets warmer and the days get longer in spring. 得到溫暖的氣候和白天的延長
7a He gets fatter and she gets thinner every year. 她愈來愈肥，她愈來愈瘦
7b The population of Sichuan gets larger and the farmland gets smaller. 面積膨脹

8 Summer comes after spring. 夏天是春天之後
8a Autumn comes after summer. 秋天是夏天之後

9 I often go swimming / skating / fishing. 我常去游泳
9a I often go home in the evening. 我常常在晚上回家
9b She often goes to a temple to worship. 她常常去廟裡祈禱

10 The coldest season of the year is winter. 冬天是一年中最冷的季節
10a Qinghai Lake is the biggest lake in Central Asia. 青海湖是中亞最大的湖
10b Musk is the most expensive product in Mahdo County. 蒙古國的麝香是該國最貴的產品

11 Which season do you like best--spring, summer, autumn, or winter? 我喜歡哪一個
11a My mother gets up earliest in my family. 我們家族裡，母親起得最早
11b I like Tibetan songs best. 我特別喜歡藏族歌曲

12 I like summer better than spring. 我比較喜歡夏天
12a I prefer autumn to winter. 我比較喜歡秋天
12b She likes Cairang better than Zhaxi. 她比較喜歡蔡朗

Grammar

1a You are coming to see her, aren’t you? 你要去見她，對吧？
1b She prefers English to Tibetan, doesn’t she? 她更喜歡英語
1c Your father goes to herd livestock very early, doesn’t he? 你父親一大早就去牧羊，對吧？
1d The grassland is very beautiful in the morning, isn’t it? 沙漠的美景在早晨看起来非常
1e You’re not a Tibetan student, are you? 你不是藏族學生吧？
Unit 17 What’s the weather like today?

Useful Expressions

1. What is the weather like today? It’s going to be / get warmer. It’s sunny / cloudy / rainy / windy / snowy.
2. What’s the date today?
3. What a cold day!

Text Explanation

1. The wind is blowing strongly. The sun is shining brightly. It’s raining heavily. He’s suffering terribly.
2. It’s going to be warmer later on. You will find Dondrup a good student later on. The yaks are not fat, but they will be fatter later on.
3. The best time to come to China is in spring or autumn. The most interesting way to go to Lhasa is walking on foot. The best student in my class is Huadan.
4. I don’t like winter because there is too much snow and ice. I like spring best because there’re many beautiful flowers. He’s late because he got up late. I love summer because I like swimming.
5 You need to wear lots of warm clothes.

5a You don’t need to come if you feel sick.

5b You don’t need to herd livestock if it snows.

6 The seasons of the year in Britain and the USA are nearly the same.

6a The landscapes in Tibet and Qinghai are nearly the same.

6b His answer and mine are the same.

Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
<td>sunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud</td>
<td>cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>snowy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health</td>
<td>healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anger</td>
<td>angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>hopeful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beauty</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright</td>
<td>brightly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usual</td>
<td>usually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>strongly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 18 Come to the party!

Useful Expressions

1 Thank you very much for asking me to the party.
2 Happy birthday!
3 Here is your present.
4 A: Would you like to come?
   B: Sure. I would love to come.
   B: No, thanks. I’m full.
5 A: A: Would you like more tsamba.
   B: No, thanks. I’m full.
6 Everything was ready.
7 All the food was on the table.
8 All the female yaks are in the shed.
9 Cairang ran to the door and found Dorji outside.

Text Explanation

1 I’m going to have a party.
2 I’m going to have breakfast / lunch / supper. / རྟ་འགྲེམ་ / རྟོགས / དཔོན་ཆེན་
3 I’m going to water my horse. / རྟོགས་འབོད་
4 A: Would you like to come? / དཔག་པ་འདི་དཔག་པ་
   B: Sure. I would love to come. / ཉོན་ཟོལ་ / རིག་པར་
   4a A: Would you like more tsamba. / ཚོམ་བསམ་
   B: No, thanks. I’m full. / རེག་ / རྟོགས་འབོད་
5 I’m sorry I’m late. / དཔོན་ཆེན་འབོད་ / དཔོན་ཆེན་འབོད་
   5a I’m sorry to hear that your mother was ill. / དཔོན་ཆེན་འབོད་ / དཔོན་ཆེན་འབོད་
   5b I’m sorry you can’t go there with Tibetan students. / དཔོན་ཆེན་འབོད་ / དཔོན་ཆེན་འབོད་
   དཔོན་ཆེན་
6 Everything was ready. / ཡིད་ཐོབ་
   6a Zhaxi, is dinner ready? I’m hungry. / དཔོན་ཆེན་ཐོབ་
   6b Is your family ready for the New Year? / དཔོན་ཆེན་ཐོབ་
7 All the food was on the table. / ཡིད་ཐོབ་
   7a All the female yaks are in the shed. / དཔོན་ཆེན་འབོད་
   7b All the apples are in the fridge. / ཡིད་ཐོབ་
8 Oncu felt very happy. / འོང་བོ་
   8a The grassland is very big. / འོང་བོ་
   8b Zhaxi looks like his father. / འོང་བོ་
9 Cairang ran to the door and found Dorji outside. / དབང་པོ་ལྟ་ལུང་ འོང་བོ་
   9a Look! Some boys are playing football outside. / འོང་བོ་
   9b Let’s meet outside the school. / འོང་བོ་

•107•
10 Can I have a look at your picture? ณัฐนิติ์เรียกพื้นระดับต้น

8a You can come later than you did yesterday. หน้าจะจะหน้าเมื่อคุณจะมาปาน

8b You can’t herd sheep in the early morning, you can herd them later. ฉันจะไม่จะไปขับกระบือในตอนเช้า ฉันจะไปขับกระบือเมื่อคุณจะมาปาน

11 There is no time. ดินเครื่อง

11a I have no money with me today. ฉันมีเงินอยู่ด้วยคุณ

11b I have no time to go there with you. ฉันมีเวลาที่จะไปด้วยคุณ

12 She wears a beautiful flower in her hair. ผีหญิงหัวขึ้นดอกไม้

12a Meduk wears a warm Tibetan robe. คณะพร้อมกับผ้าทิเบต

13 May I have some dry yak meat? ฉันจะขอเนื้อเน่า

13a May I come? ฉันจะมา

13b May I take this book to my home? ฉันจะจะยืมหนังสือจากคุณ

13c May I have another bowl of yoghurt, please? ฉันจะขอถ้วยโยเกิร์ตอีก

Grammar ผีชุติคำ

Using “would like.” ฉันจะจะ

1 ฉันจะจะช่วยคุณ

1a I am thirsty. I would like a bottle of water. ฉันจะจะดื่มน้ำ

1b I am thirsty. I want a bottle of water. ฉันจะจะดื่มน้ำ

“Would like”หัวขึ้น “want”ที่จะจะเมื่อคุณจะมาปาน ฉันจะจะ “Would like”ที่จะจะดื่มน้ำ

1c ฉันจะจะอยู่ด้วยคุณ

1d He would like some tea. เขาจะจะดื่มน้ำ

1e She would like some tea. เธอจะจะดื่มน้ำ

“Would like”ผีหญิงจะ “want”เป็นผู้อยู่ด้วยคุณจะมาปาน ฉันจะจะ “Would like”ผีหญิงจะ “want”เป็นผู้อยู่ด้วยคุณจะมาปาน

1f I’d / she’d / he’d / they’d / we’d like a glass of tea. เรารวมจะจะดื่มน้ำ

“Would like”ผีหญิงจะ “want”เป็นผู้อยู่ด้วยคุณจะมาปาน ฉันจะจะ “Would like”ผีหญิงจะ “want”เป็นผู้อยู่ด้วยคุณจะมาปาน

1g I would like some tea. เรายจะจะดื่มน้ำ

1h He would like some tea. เขาจะจะดื่มน้ำ

1i You would like some tea. เธอจะจะดื่มน้ำ

Would “Would like”ผีหญิงจะ “want”เป็นผู้อยู่ด้วยคุณจะมาปาน

1j Would you like some milk tea? ฉันจะจะดื่มน้ำ

1k Would he like some milk tea? เขาจะจะดื่มน้ำ

1l Would she like some milk tea? เธอจะจะดื่มน้ำ
I would like some milk tea.
You would like some milk tea.
He would like some milk tea.

2 “Would like”

2a Would you like to go to Lhasa?
2b I would love to go.
2c A: Would you like to come to my birthday party?
B: Sure. I would love to come.
2d A: Would you like to come to have dinner with me?
B: Sorry. I’m afraid I wouldn’t.
Unit 19 A weather report

Useful Expressions

1. It will get better soon.

2. Will it last long?

3. Don’t say that before you look at the picture.

4. Nice to see you.

5. I know why you came.

6. What bad weather!

Text Explanation

1. The radio says the sun will come out later.

1a. The moon has come out.

1b. I don’t think the marmot will come out of its hole today because there is a big dog sniffing outside the hole.

2. The radio says the clouds will lift quite quickly.

2a. The old man says the weather will be nice soon.

2b. The radio says it’s going to be windy tomorrow.

3. Our TV set was broken last week.

3a. I don’t know the time, because my watch is broken.

3b. He didn’t do morning exercise because his leg is broken.

4. It’ll take only ten minutes to walk there.

4a. It’s easier to say than to do.

4b. It’s important to learn English well.
5 I know why you came.

5a I didn’t know you were here.

5b I don’t know why Zhaxi dislikes watching TV.

6 You want to get your TV set back, don’t you?

6a Your parents go to herd livestock early every morning, don’t they?

6b You don’t know what this word means, do you?

7 I finished my homework before I went home.

7a You must wash your hands before you eat.

7b I got up yesterday before the sun rose.

8 Let’s go for a walk.

8a I usually go out for a walk after supper.

8b Let’s go home. Let’s go to the park.

9 We’ll wait for you outside the school gate.

9a Please go first, I have to wait for Cairang.

9b Meduk, your friend is waiting for you outside.

10 The day after tomorrow will be Sunday.

10a It was Teachers’ Day yesterday.

10b It’ll be rainy tomorrow.

11 There will be an English test next week.

11a There will be snow tonight in Qinghai.

11b There will be a meeting this afternoon.
Grammar

Using “Will” || “Will”

1 “Will”

1a They will go to Lhasa next year.
1b He will have a party tonight.

2 “Will” “+to eat”

2a She will come back three weeks later. (will)
2b I will to go to school tomorrow. (will)

3 “Will”

I’ll, she’ll, he’ll, they’ll, we’ll, you’ll.

5 “Will” “will not=won’t”

5a They will hold a sports meeting the day after tomorrow.
5b We won’t leave before nine.
Unit 20 What do English people eat?

Useful Expressions

1 I have no idea. གང་གི་ཚད་ལས། གང་གི་ཐོས་
2 It’s my favourite. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
3 Could you pass me the salt, please? ཉིན་ཅིང་ལྗོང་ཐོས་སུ་ལྕང་།
4 In England, people eat fish and chips. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
5 In Tibetan places, people eat tsampa and meat. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།

Text Explanation

1 Cairang’s coming tonight. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   1a Look! The bus is coming. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   1b I’m going to Lhasa on Monday. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།

2 You must help me do the cooking this afternoon. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   2a Can you help me move the heavy box? གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   2b Zhaxi often helps his parents do the housework. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།

3 It’s my favourite. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   3a Tsamba is my favourite food. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   3b Dorri is my favourite Tibetan singer. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།

4 Let’s give her something different to eat. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   4a I have a few words to say on this question. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   4b Stop talking, I have something important to tell you. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།

5 A: Would you like a cup of tea? གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   B: Yes, please. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
5a A: Would you like a glass of milk? གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   B: No, I’d like some water. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
5b A: Would you like something to drink? གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
   B: No, thanks. གང་ཐོས། གང་ཐོས།
It must be more delicious!

6a He must be right.

6b I must go to the train station.

Please give me a ring after you talk to your parents.

7a Please write a letter to me after you arrive in America.

7b He asked me to bring some butter when I come to school.

Grammar

1 Which is the most delicious, beef, mutton, or tsamba?

2 A tiger is more dangerous than a cat.

3 Which is more popular, horse-racing or yak-racing?

4 Zhaxi is taller than Cairang.

5 You have much more ability in written Tibetan than I do.
Unit 21 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1. What can I do for you? 我能帮你什么吗？
2. I need to do some shopping. 我需要买些东西。
3. The children played happily in the park. 孩子们在公园里快乐地玩耍。
4. Do it carefully, don’t be nervous! 细心点做，别紧张。

Text Explanation

1. She wanted to get ready for the party. 她想为派对做准备。
   1a. Doma’s mother is getting ready for the temple meeting. 唐娜的母亲正在为寺庙的集会做准备。
   1b. The herdsmen are getting ready for the New Year. 牧民们正在为新年做准备。

2. Not everyone likes chicken. 不是每个人都喜欢鸡肉。
   2a. Not every student can answer the question. 不是每个学生都能回答这个问题。
   2b. Not everyone envies her. 不是每个人都嫉妒她。

3. We’ll need one more. 我们还需要一个。
   3a. What delicious candy! I want one more piece. 多么美味的糖果！我还要一片。

4. The students are cleaning the classroom. Some are sweeping the floor. The others are cleaning the windows and doors. 学生们正在打扫教室。一些人在扫地。其他的在擦窗户和门。
   4a. Here are three pencils. One is red, another is blue, the third is yellow. 这里有三支铅笔。一支是红色的，另一支是蓝色的，第三支是黄色的。
   4b. My family has a large number of livestock that includes yaks, sheep, and horses. 我的家庭有许多牲畜，包括牦牛、羊和马。
Grammar

1 How beautiful the garden is!

2 How delicious the food is!

3 How well you sing!

4 What a funny man he is!

5 What an interesting film it is!

6 What beautiful girls they are!
Unit 22 What a good, kind girl

Useful Expressions

1 Which is the way to the bus-station, please?  ཤོས་བོད་སྐད་གི་སྐབས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།
2 What’s the matter? རུས་ཐབས་སོ།
3 Go down this street. འཕྲིན་ཐོབ་སྔོན་ཐུབ་སྔོན་ལ།
4 How can I get to the Yak Hotel? ཤོས་བོད་སྐད་གི་འབྲེལ་བཤེས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།
5 What a kind girl! རུས་ཐབས་སོ་སོགས་ཐོན་པོ་བཞིན་ལ།

Text Explanation

1 Excuse me, where is the Qinghai Hotel, please? རུས་བོད་སྐད་གི་སྐབས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།
1a Where is your home? རུས་ཐབས་སོ་སྲིད་བཞིན་ལ།
1b How do you get home? རུས་ཐབས་སོ་སྨྲ་བཞིན་ལ།
1c Where do your parents live? རུས་ཐབས་སོ་སྲིད་བཞིན་ལ།

2 Go down this way until you reach the end. འཕྲིན་ཐོབ་སྔོན་ཐུབ་སྔོན་ལ་ནང་ཐེག་པོ་བཞིན་ལ།
2a They reached Lhasa two weeks ago. ཤོས་བོད་སྐད་གི་ལྟ་སྦྱེས་གང་ཐུབ་སྔོན་ལ།
2b You must wait until I come back. རུས་ཐབས་སོ་སྲིད་བཞིན་ལ་ནང་ཐེག་པོ་ཤེས་བཞིན་ལ།
2c A: When will you get to Qinghai Lake? རུས་བོད་སྐད་གི་ཤེས་ཤུ་སྦྱེ་སུལ་བཞིན་ལ།
    B: I’ll get there tomorrow. རུས་བོད་སྐད་གི་ཤེས་ཤུ་སྦྱེ་སུལ་བཞིན་ལ།

3 The address was on a piece of paper, but I can’t find it now. རུས་བོད་སྐད་གི་སྐབས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།
3a Zhaxi found Lhamo’s watch, so she thanked him. ཤོས་བོད་སྐད་གི་ལྟ་སྦྱེས་གང་ལོ་ཁམས་གཞི།
3b I looked for my watch everywhere, but I couldn’t find it. རུས་བོད་སྐད་གི་སྐབས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།

4 It’ll take you half an hour. ཤོས་བོད་སྐད་གི་སྐབས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།
4a. How long does it take you to go to school? ཤོས་བོད་སྐད་གི་སྐབས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།
4b It takes me twenty minutes. ཤོས་བོད་སྐད་གི་སྐབས་འཇོག་གཏོར་བཞིན་ལ།
5 It may be in your inside pocket.  གིས་ཐོབ་མིག་རྣམས་བཤད་པ་བུ་བོད་ི་ཞིག

5a Let’s ask that old man. He may know.  གི་སེམས་ཀྱིས་ཐོག་པ་བྱ། དུས་མྱ་མེད་ི་ཞིག

5b He goes to work on foot. So do I.  སྣོད་ལྡན་ཕྲོ་དག་ཐོག་པ་མིན། དུས་མའི་ཆེས་མིན།

Grammar དོན་དོན་དབང་མཐོང་།

Using “may.” || “may”ལྡེ་བཅོམ་།

1 “ཐོན་པ་+may+ཤིང་” དེ་བཤད་པའི་བོད་བ་དག་ངོ་བོ་བོད་པ་གཏོར་ཐོག་པ་མིན།

1a I may go herding tomorrow?  བོད་པ་དག་དང་བོད་པ་གཏོར་ཐོག་པ་མིན།

2b I may not go herding tomorrow.

2a May I come in?  བོད་པ་དག་དང་ཆུ་ལྟ་ཤིང་།

2b May I borrow your pen?  བོད་པ་དག་དང་བོད་པ་གཏོར་ཐོག་པ་མིན།

2c May I have a look at the picture?  བོད་པ་དག་དང་བོད་པ་གཏོར་ཐོག་པ་མིན།

3 “May”ལ་“will” བོད་པ་དག་དང་བོད་པ་གཏོར་ཐོག་པ་མིན།
Unit 23 You mustn’t play on the road

Useful Expressions

1 You mustn’t eat anything before the blood test. Կամ կիրառվեք ճանապարհների համար կամ կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգնած կանգ

2 If you don’t go soon, you’ll be late. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

3 You must wait for your turn. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

4 If you aren’t careful, a car may hit you. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

Text Explanation

1 You must be careful. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

2 If you study hard, you may pass the exam. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

3 It’s too dangerous to go there. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

4 At the head of the queue was an old man. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

5 Everyone laughed at the woman’s mistake. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

6 You mustn’t eat anything until you see a doctor. Ու կարծիք կատարված կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծիք կարծ

119
Grammar

Using “must.”|| “must”

“must”- བོད་ཡིག་ཨེ་བར་བཅས་པ་གཞི་སྐྱེས་པ་དེ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀའི་རྩ་གསུམ་བདག

1 དེ་ལ་ཡིག་གི་བོད་ཡིག་དང་བོད་བློ་བོད་བོད་པོ་གཞི་སྐྱེས་པ་དེ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀའི་རྩ་གསུམ་བདག

1a Ann plays basketball every day. She must like playing basketball. ཐེ་ལ་ཡིག་གི་བོད་ཡིག་དང་བོད་བློ་བོད་པོ་གཞི་སྐྱེས་པ་དེ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀའི་རྩ་གསུམ་བདག

2 དེ་ལ་ཡིག་གི་བོད་ཡིག་དང་བོད་བློ་བོད་བོད་པོ་གཞི་སྐྱེས་པ་དེ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀའི་རྩ་གསུམ་བདག

2a You must buy a ticket. ཐེ་ལ་ཡིག་གི་བོད་ཡིག་དང་བོད་བློ་བོད་པོ་གཞི་སྐྱེས་པ་དེ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀའི་རྩ་གསུམ་བདག

2b You must go now. ཐེ་ལ་ཡིག་གི་བོད་ཡིག་དང་བོད་བློ་བོད་པོ་གཞི་སྐྱེས་པ་དེ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀའི་རྩ་གསུམ་བདག

2c If you are ill, you must go to see the doctor. ཐེ་ལ་ཡིག་གི་བོད་ཡིག་དང་བོད་བློ་བོད་པོ་གཞི་སྐྱེས་པ་དེ་དེ་གཉིས་ཀའི་རྩ་གསུམ་བདག
Unit 24 What do you have to do?

Useful Expressions

1 I have to look after the baby.
2 She will come if she can.
3 Keep everything clean and tidy.
4 I often feel tired.
5 If you do that, you’ll soon feel much healthier.

Text Explanation

1 I have to tidy my room.
   1a We have to get up early tomorrow.
   1b I have to do my homework at this moment.
   1c My mother is ill so I have to look after her at home.

2 Every time I do housework, I feel tired.
   2a Every time I catch a cold, I have headaches.
   2b Every time I go to the temple, I smell burning incense.

3 If I work in the garden, I have to sit down and rest every five minutes.
   3a There is a bus stop every two kilometres.
   3b Uncle Dorji goes to the temple every day.

4 What do you mean?
   4a I mean you eat too much food, and you don’t exercise enough.
   4b I mean I can’t come here so early.
5 I will go instead of you.

5a We’ll go to the temple instead of going to the park.

5b Zhaxi gave Cumu a pen instead of a pencil.

Grammar

Using “have to.” || “Have to”\\n
“Have to”\\n
“have to”\\n
1 It’s too late, I have to go home.

2 He has to work for fourteen hours a day.

3 I lived very far from the school so I had to get up early.

4 You have to come here on time.
Unit 25 The visit to Monkey Island

Useful Expressions

1. Can’t you hear anything? 甥ོ་ཐོ་དེ་བོད་དེ་ཐོ་ན།
2. Don’t be afraid. གོང་ནས་
3. It’s time for our lunch. སླི་བདག་དང་འཚོལ་མེད།
4. Close the door. Keep the room warm. གཏང་མ་སྲོལ་ཡིན།
5. Take it away! དུག་མེད།

Text Explanation

1. Uncle Huadan said we could borrow his horse. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
   1a. I’m going to borrow some English books from the library. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་འགོད་ལྟར་འཁོད་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
   1b. Don’t lend the bike to others. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་འཁོད་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
2. Shall I bring food for a picnic? གོང་ནས་ལེན་ཐོ་བོད་པ་མེད་པོ་འི་ངོ་བོ་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
   2a. Shall we go to your home? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
   2b. Shall we go to play football? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
   2c. That’s a good idea. Let’s go. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
3. We have never been there before. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
   3a. A: Have you ever been to Tibet? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      B: Yes, I have. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      A: Where is Dorri? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      B: He has gone to Kumbum Monastery. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
4. Can’t you hear anything? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
   4a. A: Do you have something to eat? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      B: Yes, but only a little bread. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      A: Is there anybody in the dormitory room? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      B: No, there is nobody in the dormitory room. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      A: Are there any Tibetans at the cinema? གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
      B: Yes, there are some. གོང་ནས་འདི་དེ་བོད་དེ་ལེན་མེད།
5 She started to run to the boat. 

5a They began to have class. 

5b Don’t forget to bring your Tibetan notebook. 

Grammar ཤེས་ཐེག་ཆེན་ལ།

1 It’s important to learn English well. 

2 They want to go out for a walk. 

3 They went out to see what’s happening. 

4 Did you see her dance at the party?
Unit 26 A good doctor

Useful Expressions

1 She can do it all by herself. processable
2 He fell off the horse and he hurt himself. processable
3 She taught herself Tibetan. processable
4 He is very rich, so he can buy himself lots of good things. processable
5 He has much money. processable

Text Explanation

1 Could she swim when she was four years old? processable
1a I could ride a horse when I was eight years old. processable
1b I couldn’t speak English one year ago, but now I can speak a little. processable
2 I hope she didn’t hurt herself. processable
2a My left leg hurt this morning. processable
2b He jumped down from the roof and hurt his arm. processable
3 I don’t enjoy myself very much. processable
3a A: I’m going to a birthday party tomorrow. processable
   B: Oh, good! Enjoy yourself. processable
3b I’m going to Tibet next week. processable
3c It’s good news. Enjoy yourself. processable
4 His parents didn’t know what was wrong. processable
4a I want to know whose book it is. processable
4b Do you know how they go to Burma? processable
5 She said it was going to be sunny tomorrow. processable
5a Huadan heard that there was a good doctor in a town not far away. processable
6 Don’t worry. I’ll be OK. processable
Grammar

“Can” is a verb that indicates the ability or possibility of doing something. In English, “can” is used to express the ability to do something. For example, “Can you speak Tibetan?” means “Do you have the ability to speak Tibetan?”

- “Can” can also be used to express permission, as in “Can I come in?”
- “Can” can be used in questions to ask if something is possible, as in “Can it be done?”
- “Can” can also be used to express the ability to do something, as in “I can swim.”

In Tibetan, “can” is translated as “can”.

1. They can speak Tibetan very well.
   སྐད་ལུགས་དེ་དེའི་དོན་འཕེལ་བ་ན།
2. I can ride horses, but Cairang can’t.
   ཨོ་རེར་བའི་དོན་དེ་དེ་དེའི་དོན་འཕེལ་བ་ན།
3. You can go now.
   ཨོ་དེ་བཟོའི་ཐེག་ཆགས།
4. Could you please close the door?
   འོ་ཐོད་ཀྱི་བློ་འབྲི་བུ་བསྐལ་བ་ན།
5. I can go to Gangcha County by myself.
   སྗང་ད་བང་ཆ་རྩ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེའི་དོན་འཕེལ་བ་ན།
6. You can get there by bus.
   རྡོ་རྗེ་རལ་འདས་ཙོ་རྗེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེའི་དོན་འཕེལ་བ་ན།
Unit 27 Ling Feng’s diary

Useful Expressions

1 I can hear her singing in the room. ฉันยินดีได้ยินเธอร้องในห้อง
2 Let’s go home. ไปบ้านดีไหม
3 It stopped raining. ฝนหยุดตกแล้ว
4 The teacher asked us to stop talking. ครูได้เรียกพวกเราให้หยุดพูด
5 I told him the whole story. ฉันได้เล่าเรื่องเต็มไปหมดให้เขานะ
6 I nearly forgot! ฉันน่าจะลืมไป

Text Explanation

1 How did Zhaxi make the baby stop crying? ฉนี่จะทำให้ลูกน้อยweep?
   1a I saw him playing on the playground. ฉันเห็นเขาเล่นอยู่บนสนามกีฬา
   1b My classmates all went to People’s Park. ,classmates ทั้งหมดไปที่สวนสาธารณะ
2 At first she was asleep. เธอถึงจะหลับ
   2a At first we did not know each other, but now we’re good friends. ฉันกับเขาไม่เคยรู้กัน
   2b At first I didn’t know how to ride a horse, but now I do it very well. ฉันไม่รู้วิธีการขี่ม้า
3 Half an hour later she woke up. ด้วยเกินครึ่งชั่วโมงเธอตื่น
   3a Please wake me up at six thirty tomorrow morning. ขอให้ปลุกฉันขึ้นมาในเวลาเก้า
   3b Wake up! It’s time to go. ตื่นมาเถอะ เรายังต้องเดินทาง
4 She looked at me and cried harder and harder. เธอบอกเขามึงอยู่และเธอร้องไห้ต่อ
   4a I looked at the blackboard, but I couldn’t see anything. ฉันมองลงหน้าดำ
   4b A: What are you looking for? ฉันเขามีสิ่งของอย่างไรบ้าง?
      B: I’m looking for my watch, but I can’t find it. ฉันกำลังลายถูกที่จะหาถูก
5 She stopped crying and listened to the music. หยุดweep แล้วเธอฟังเพลง
   5a Did you finish reading the book? ฉันเลาหนังสือไปหมดยัง?
   5b They are listening to the teacher’s lecture / talk. พวกเขาเดินทางอยู่ในห้อง
After a few minutes she started to cry again.

When I go to Nepal for a holiday, will you please take care of my house?

She borrowed a few books from the library.

---

**Grammar**

**Compound Sentences**

1. You are a teacher and I am a teacher, too.
2. He worked very hard, but he did not pass the exam.
3. I went to see our teacher, but he wasn’t at home.
4. I don’t want to be late, so I get up very early every day.
Useful Expressions

1. Look into the river.
2. Look at my eyes.
3. She lost her pen at home.
4. Do you need any help?
5. I can’t leave before nine.
6. Don’t be late for work.

Text Explanation

1. Why did you laugh in the end?
   1a. He won the game in the end.
   1b. He tried several times and at last he succeeded.

2. Every day he made one of the smaller animals bring him something to eat.
   2a. One of the students is Meduk.
   2b. Canada is one of the biggest countries in the world.

3. I’ll speak to him.
   3a. Please speak loudly!
   3b. A: How can you guess I’m from Chamdo?
       B: The way you speak.

4. I never lie. / I never tell lies.

5. With these words the tiger jumped into the river.
   5a. We can walk with our legs and feet.
   5b. Zhaxi went shopping with Cairang.
6 I’d like to have a talk with you.

6a The teacher came into the classroom with some books in his hand.

6b With your help, I can finish the work in time.

Grammar

Past Simple.

yesterday     last week     one minute ago
last year     one hour ago     last month
one day ago   last night...     one week ago... 

1 Cairang gave me a new pen for my birthday.

2 My friend bought me a beautiful present.

3 We often heard her sing in the room.

4 We must keep the classroom clean and tidy.

5 We usually call him Cairang Dorji.
Unit 1 Teacher’s Day

Useful Expressions ར་ལྟ་འདི་འཚལ

1 Happy Teachers’ Day! ར་ལྟ་འདི་འཚལ
2 Best wishes to you. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
3 Glad to see you again. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
4 Of course. རྟེ་ལྟེ། རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
5 Zhacai is short for Zhaxi Cairang. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།

Grammar ར蚌་ལྟྷ།

1 Present Simple. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།

2e I shall milk the yak. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
2b We are learning English. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
2c Lhamo is milking the yak. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
1a What do you do? རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
1b What does the dog do? རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
1c I usually eat tsamba. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
1d Where does she work? རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།

2 Present Continuous. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།

2b We are learning English. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
2c Lhamo is milking the yak. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
2a A: What are you doing? རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
   B: I’m studying some new words. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།

3 Future Simple. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།

3a We are going to go to school. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
3b He will come later. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
3c Will you ring him up this evening? རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
3d They will not come to your home tomorrow. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
3e I shall milk the yak. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
3f We shall visit the museum. རུ་སྟུང་བའི་བཟས་བཞིན།
4 Past Simple.

4a I went to Qinghai Lake last week. ང་ར་ར་ང་ར་ར་ར་ར་ང་ར་ང་ར་ར་ང་ར་ར་ང་ར
4b Where did you go last Sunday? དམེད་དེ་རང་སྱོད་རྟེན་འདུག་མ་རོ་བས
4c We had lunch at one o’clock. མྱུར་འབྲུག་བྱུགས་ནོར་འབྲུག་བོད་འཕེབས།
4d I finished my homework at nine thirty last night. རྗེབས་མང་དོད་ཏོས་ཕུང་སྐབས་ཕོ་བོ་བོད་འཕེབས།

Text Explanation

1 Glad to see you. གྲྲང་བོན་ལ་བོར་འགྲེབས།
1a A: This is Dorji. སོ་རི་དོར་ཇི་
   B: How do you do? Glad to see you! སོ་རི་དོར་ཇི་ གྲྲང་བོན་ལ་བོར་འགྲེབས།
   Dorji: Glad to see you, too. སོ་རི་དོར་ཇི་ གྲྲང་བོན་ལ་བོར་འགྲེབས།
1b T: Class, I am your new teacher. Pleased to meet you. གྲངས་བོན་ནི་ནིད་འདུག་བོད་འཕེབས།
   གྲངས་བོན་ནི་ནིད་འདུག་བོད་འཕེབས།
   S: Pleased to meet you, too. གྲངས་བོན་ནི་ནིད་འདུག་བོད་འཕེབས།

2 Did you have a good summer holiday? ཡོངས་དུས་རབས་ཕོ་རི་ལོ་ཁོ་བོ་བོད་ལ་སྐྱེངས།
2a Danden will go back to Lhasa this summer holiday. བདེན་དང་འབྲེལ་ལུས་ལུས་ཕོ་རི་ལོ་ཁོ་བོ་བོད་ལ་སྐྱེངས།

3 How’s Kate? གུལ་མེད།
3a I’m going to watch the game this afternoon, how about you? གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད།

4 They are both fine.
4a Both brothers are clever. གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད།
4b She can both sing and dance. གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད།
4c They’re both herdsmen. གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད་གུལ་མེད།

5 Everyone is going into the classroom. We’d better go, too. དབྱང་ལྷག་བོ་རྡོ་རྗེ་བོད་ལ་ཕོུ་བོ་བོད་ལ་སྐྱེངས།
5a It’s too late, we’d better go home now. དབྱང་ལྷག་བོ་རྡོ་རྗེ་བོད་ལ་ཕོུ་བོ་བོད་ལ་སྐྱེངས།
5b It’s too dark, you’d better not read. དབྱང་ལྷག་བོ་རྡོ་རྗེ་བོད་ལ་ཕོུ་བོ་བོད་ལ་སྐྱེངས།

6 Not one is away. མཐའ་དབྱང་འགོ་སུ་མེད།
6a Everyone is here. མཐའ་དབྱང་འགོ་སུ་མེད།
7 Here are some beautiful flowers for you, with our best wishes.

8 What beautiful flowers! What a good idea! How beautiful the grassland is!

9 The students speak English when they have English lessons. We have a Tibetan lesson today.

10 Tomorrow I want you to give us a talk, Jim. Tomorrow Mr Danba will give a talk in the meeting room.

11 There is nothing difficult about it. A: Why don’t you ride your horse? B: There is something wrong with it.

12 What subject should I talk about? You should help her with the housework. The students are talking about the film.

13 Maybe I could talk about English names. Maybe I could talk about Tibetan food.

14 …do please… Do tell me. Do study hard.
15 family name. རིག་
15a English name རིག་ིར་གཞན་ཁོག
15b full name རིག་ིར་ཁོག
15c James (first / given name རིག་མེད)
15d Allen (middle / given name རིག་མེད)
15e Green (family name/ last name / surname རིག་མེད)

16 What subject did Jim choose? རིག་མེད་དེ་ལ་ལེགས་དང་།
16a Lhomotso is choosing books in the library. རིག་མིང་དེ་བོད་བོད་དགེ་མེད་དེ་ལེགས་དང་།

17 The people in the rooms below are very noisy. རིག་མིང་དེ་བོད་དགེ་མེད་དེ་ལེགས་དང་།

18 A: What do you call this? རིག་མིང་དེ་ལེགས་དང་།
B: We call it “book.” རིག་མིང་དེ་ལེགས་དང་།
18a He often makes telephone calls to me. རིག་མིང་དེ་ལེགས་དང་།

19 I’m going to give her a book. Maybe I will give her some flowers. རིག་མིང་དེ་ལེགས་དང་།

Unit 2 The sports meeting

Useful Expressions

1 Come on! มาลุย!

2 Well done! 做得好!

3 Congratulations! บันทึกที่ได้!

4 Bad luck. เสียเวลาอย่างนี้

5 Hold a meeting. ประชุม

6 Right now. อย่างนี้

Grammar

Comparison of adverbs

ตัวย่อการแก้ไขเรื่องหน้า “-er” “-est”

1a He runs faster than you. เขาวิ่งเร็วกว่าคุณ

1b It’s much colder today than yesterday. วันนี้หนาวกว่าวานนี้

1c This book is much more interesting than that one. นิยายนี้น่าอ่านกว่านิยายหนึ่ง

1d It rains more often in Shanghai than in Beijing. เล่นฝนบ่อยกว่า بكินี

2 “tall” “taller” “tallest”

late later latest

nice nicer nicest

2a He is the best student in our class. คุณคือนักเรียนที่ดีที่สุดในชั้นเรียน

3 “Big” “hot”

big bigger biggest

hot hotter hottest
4. consonants (དོན་དོན།) +

*y* → “i + er, est.”

ey
early earlier earliest
busy busier busiest

5. “more” + “most” ་

quickly more quickly most quickly
beautiful more beautiful most beautiful
good / well better best
many / much more most
far farther / further farthest / furthest

Text Explanation ་

1. Last week No. 14 Middle School held a sports meeting on the playground. མཚན་བཟོས་སྲུང་སྲུང་བའི་ནང་པོ་འབྲི་འཛིན་དབང་པོའི་གཞི་སྒེགས་པའི་དོན་ཐོག་མུང་།

1a He’s holding a book in his hand. བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

1b Cairang runs fastest of all. བརྟེག་ཆུང་དེ་དེ་དག་དེ་དག་གི་དབང་པོ་མེད།

1c Last week the Tibetan middle school held a sports meeting. མཚན་བཟོས་སྲུང་སྲུང་བའི་སྲིད་སྲིད་ཕུན་ཚུགས་ལ་ཐབས་པའི་སྲིད་སྲིད་ཕུན་ཚུགས་བཞི་སྒེགས་པའི་གཞི་སྒེགས་པའི་དོན་ཐོག་མུང་།

2. The building near our school is the tallest in our city. བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

2a The boy is climbing the tallest tree. བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

3. Huifang jumped quite far, but Ann jumped further. བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

3a Dorji jumped quite far, but Norbu jumped farther than him. བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

4. Bad / Good luck. གསར་ / གསར།

4a A: Did you go to the park last Sunday? བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

B: No, I was ill and had to stay at home. བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

A: Bad luck. གསར།

4b A: Did you win? བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

B: Yes, we are the first. བདག་འཐོན་བུ་ཆི་ག་ཅེད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་དམིགས་བོ་མི་སྤྲོད་བོ་མི།

A: Good luck. གསར།
5 All the runners got ready to run. Everyone began to shout very loudly.

6 Everyone began to shout very loudly. It started to rain that night. My brother wants to learn English.

7 …but not fast enough. Lhaben is strong enough to catch that wild yak. I don’t have enough time to finish the work.

8 Well done, everyone! Congratulations, Lhaben! Yu Yang and Jim were neck and neck.

9 Yu Yang and Jim were neck and neck.

10 Lucy didn’t do very well. She did rather badly. Danba rides very well. Qiechung’s mother was badly ill. The train moves rather slowly.

11 It was difficult to see. It is easy to say, but it is difficult to do. It is important to think clearly before speaking.
Useful Expressions

1. It’s quite a nice horse! 
2. I’m sorry to trouble you. 
3. Hands up 
4. Agree with

Grammar

Comparison of the adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>bigger</th>
<th>(the) biggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>stronger</td>
<td>(the) strongest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>more dangerous</td>
<td>(the) most dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>important</td>
<td>more important</td>
<td>(the) most important</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Text Explanation

1. Do you like learning a foreign language? 
   a. The children like swimming in summer. 
   b. Gangcu liked to drink milk this morning.

2. In English “qu” makes a /kw/ sound.
   a. The fridge makes a strange sound.

3. It’s another way of saying “fast.”
   a. Another way of saying “bicycle” is “bike.”

4. Will you please say it again more slowly?

5. Hands up, please!

6. What do you mean by...?

7. I see. Thanks.
8 Miss Zhao is one of the most popular teachers in the school.
8a This is one of the most important books about science.
8b The Yangtze River is one of the longest rivers in the world.

9 Yesterday morning she came into class as usual.
9a Today the classroom is as clean as usual.

10 There was a big smile on her face.
10a Doma smiled after she knew she was the first.

11 I’m afraid some people forgot to sweep the floor.

12 There was no excuse.
12a If you don’t finish your homework, you can’t find any excuse.

13 Everyone is at school today except Lin Tao.
13a We all eat mutton except Lhamo.

14 Luckily the weather last week was not as wet as it is today.

15 It’s time for us to start the lesson now.

16 I think foreign languages are more interesting than science.

17 I really can’t agree with you.
18 I prefer science. (འི་ཐོབ་བོད་ལྟ་)ཐོ་ནང་བརྟོན་ིརྗོན་བཤད་པར་ཞུས་ཤེས་

18a A: Which do you prefer, apples or pears? འཕྲོ་དཔོན་བོད་ལྟ་ིརྗོན་བཤད་པོན་བཤད་པོན་བཤད་པོན་

B: I prefer apples to pears. འཕྲོ་དཔོན་བོད་ལྟ་ིརྗོན་བཤད་པོན་བཤད་པོན་

19 I think Chinese is less difficult than English. འཕྲོ་དཔོན་བོད་ལྟ་ིརྗོན་གྲགས་ལྟ་ིརྗོན་གྲགས་ལྟ་ིརྗོན་

20 I would like to drop maths. I find it very difficult. འཕྲོ་དཔོན་ཞིག་དིང་ཞེས་ིརྗོན་ཞིག་དིང་ཞེས་ིརྗོན་ཞིག་དིང་ཞེས་

20a I would like to stop herding. I find it very difficult. འཕྲོ་དཔོན་ཞིག་དིང་ཞེས་ིརྗོན་ཞིག་དིང་ཞེས་ིརྗོན་ཞིག་དིང་ཞེས་

•141•
Unit 4 What were they doing?

Useful Expressions

1 I’m sorry to trouble you. (চেঞ্চি জন্যে অসুখী হন)
2 It’s quite a nice… (যেটা দেখি সুন্দর)
3 Be angry with. (বিশেষকরে ক্ষুদ্রতা করে)
4 Get back. (দিয়ে ফিরে আসে)
5 Fall asleep. (ক্ষুধা করে নামান)
6 Help… with. (কোন কিছু সাহায্য করে)

Grammar

Past Continuous

1 I / He / She was studying. (আমি / তিনি / সেই ছাত্র ছাড়া ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে)
2 We / You / They were studying. (আমি / তুমি / তারা ছাড়া ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে ছেলে)

Text Explanation

1 I am trying to draw a horse. (আমি চেষ্টা করছি হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে হেলে)
1a I’m trying to milk the goat. (আমি চেষ্টা করছি মিক গো গো গো
2 It’s quite a nice horse! / What a nice horse it is! (যেটা দেখি সুন্দর)
3 Don’t play with fire. It’s very dangerous. (আমি চেষ্টা করছি মিক গো গো
4 What was Lily drawing when the teacher came in? (যেটা দেখি সুন্দর)
5 He lived in a tall building in the city of Moscow. (আমি চেষ্টা করছি মিক গো
6 Every night the man upstairs came home late. (আমি চেষ্টা করছি মিক গো)
7 He always took off his shoes and threw them on the floor.
7a It’s warm in the room, you’d better take off your coat.
7b The plane will take off at ten in the morning.

8 He found it very difficult to get to sleep.
8a They got to the park at nine yesterday morning.

9 The noise wakes me up!
9a Don’t make a lot of noise.

10 Would you please not do this?
10a I am sorry. I won’t do it again.

11 He had his supper, listened to the radio, read a newspaper and then went to bed.
11a I am looking at the blackboard, but I can’t see anything.
11b In class, the students must listen to the teacher carefully.
11c Last night Dorji went to bed at nine, but he went to sleep at ten.
Unit 5 The accident

Useful Expressions

1 You’d better not talk.
2 Go as quickly as you can.
3 Don’t crowd round him.
4 It’s nice of you.
5 Hurry up.

Text Explanation

1 Were you washing clothes last night?
1a Was Mom making a dress last night?

2 Get up and dress quickly.
2a He put on his coat and went out.

3 Today he wears a blue coat.
3a Who’s the man in the brown jacket?

4 You look tired today.
4a He doesn’t look happy.
4b Can you tell me why?
4c Mr. Zhaxi looks very young.

5 I had a little accident last Sunday.
5a There have been many traffic accidents this year.

6 What happened?

7 The children were leaving school on Tuesday when they saw a truck.

8 It’s nothing, don’t worry. You’ll be OK.
9 I'm watching him draw the picture.

10 As quickly as she could, Miss Zhao got a medicine box.

10a As quickly as she could, Doma got a cup of butter tea.

11 With the medicine box under her arm, Miss Zhao hurried off to look after the man.

11a With the butter tea in her hand, Doma hurried off to look after the old man.

11b That young man went out with no hat on.

11c Don’t hurry, we’re not late.

11d Hurry home before it gets dark.

12 It’s really nice of you. / It’s very kind of you.

13 While they were sweeping the floor, the bell rang.

13a The students were reading when the teacher came in.
Unit 6 In the library

Useful Expressions མི་འཛིན་བཤད་པ་བོད་

1. I have got a book. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
2. I’m so glad. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
3. What a pity. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
4. reading room རང་སྒྲིག་ལ་
5. on time རང་སྒྲིག་ལ་

Grammar མི་འཛིན་བཤད་པ་

Present Prefect མི་འཛིན་བཤད་པ་

1a I have seen the film. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
1b The teacher has gone to the office. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
1c I haven’t seen her these days. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
1d Have you returned the book today? བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
1e I have never seen him before. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
1f We have lived in Lhasa since 1975. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
1g He came here two hours ago. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
1h He has been here for two hours. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།

Text Explanation མི་འཛིན་བཤད་པ་

1. I’ve lost my science book. Have you seen it anywhere? བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
2. Have you found your ruler yet? བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
3. In the library she has got books on many different subjects. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
4. She works very hard and is very helpful. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
5. She likes the children to read books in the reading room. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
6. But she is very strict. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
7. Our teacher is strict in her work. བོད་དཔོན་དོན་པ།
8 You must always return your library book on time.  
9 He asks very politely.  
10 Tom is a polite boy.  
11 It’s polite to say “Thank you” when someone helps you.  
12 They’re on that shelf over there.  
13 I borrowed a book from the library two weeks ago.  
14 I’ve looked for it everywhere.  
15 What a pity!  
16 What a pity! He couldn’t go with us.  
17 I’m afraid that if you’ve lost it, you must pay for it.  
18 It’s the library’s. Please be more careful from now on.  
19 You must study hard from now on.  
20 Have you ever travelled on a train?
Unit 7 Mainly revision

Text Explanation

1 What is the most popular subject in your class?
1a Who is the youngest person in your class?
1b Who is the best guitar player at the moment?

2 Miss Forgetful.
2a I always forget dates.
2b He has forgotten all his French.
2c Old people are sometimes forgetful.

3 Here is a shopping list so you won’t forget anything.

4 Have you finished already?
4a When she reached home, her mother asked, “Have you got everything?”

5 That wasn’t very clever!
5a Uncle Lhaben arrived in Lhasa yesterday morning.
5b The students got to school at eight o’clock.

6 She was taking the things out of the basket when she dropped a bag of candy.
6a We were having supper when the phone rang.

7 He was good at swimming when he was a child.

8 They both started to pick the apples again.
Unit 8 On the farm

Useful Expressions

1 With pleasure. 2 No hurry.

Grammar

Present Perfect with “already, just, yet, ever, never.”

1 Have you finished your work yet? 2 Have you ever been to a chicken farm?

Text Explanation

1 There are several kinds of animals on the farm.

2 Have you ever been to West Hill Farm? 2a Have you ever been to Qinghai Lake?

3 I’ll return it as soon as I can.

4 He told me about this as soon he saw me.

5 Thank you very much for lending it to me.

6 Could I borrow a pen, please?

6a A: May I borrow your bike?  B: Sorry. I lent it to Hangmu yesterday.

6b A: Could you lend me your pen?  B: Certainly. Here you are.
7 It’s just had a baby.

8 I’ve never heard of that before.

9 I’ve just heard about his illness.

10 Is there anyone at home?

11 I hope everything goes well.

12 What can I do for you?

13 It’s dead.

14 The hunter fired and the tiger fell dead.

15 The old man died two years ago.

16 Have you forgotten already?

17 Lily has just finished her homework.

18 What do you get from yaks?

19 Have you ever milked a yak?

20 Have you got a moment?
Unit 9 A visit to a factory

Useful Expressions

1. Don’t rush. 
2. Take a look. 
3. All one’s life. 

Grammar

Present Perfect with “for, since.”
1. I’ve known Mr. Norbu for three years. 
2. I’ve lived here since 1998. 

Present Perfect compared with Past Simple.
3. He has gone to America. 
4. He went to America last month. 

Text Explanation

1. How long have you been at school? 
   1a A: How long have you been like this? 
   2 The factory has been there for several years. 
   3 Tomorrow it’s our turn to clean the school. 
   4 They arrived early on a Tuesday morning. 
   4a On a cold winter night… 
   4b The Yellow River runs through Jiansa. 
   5 The students walked through the gates with Uncle Wang. 
   5a The thief came in through the window. 
   5b The Yellow River runs through Jiansa.
6 There is a bridge across the river.

7 Please come up these steps with me and be careful.

8 We don’t want any of you to get lost.

9 The workers all wear thick clothes and glasses. 9a Tibetan girls like wearing red flowers in their hair.

10 The glasses keep their eyes safe.

10a Please keep the door open, for it is very hot in the room.

11 My house is about twenty minutes by bike.

11a It is about half an hour’s walk (from here) to the factory.

11b My home is about three hours by bus from here.

12 I’ve lived there all my life.

12a He has taught in this school all his life.
Unit 10 Mr. Green’s problem

Useful Expressions

1. Hold on for a moment, please. 
2. I’m afraid he isn’t here right now. 
3. I’m sure he won’t mind. 
4. He may fail…
5. Leave a message. 
6. in trouble
7. do one’s best
8. learn by oneself
9. go back
10. be able to
11. do well in

Grammar

Object Clause

1. She says (that) she will leave a message on his desk. 
2. We know (that) Danba will work hard. 

Text Explanation

1. Could I speak to the headmaster, please? 
2. He wants to talk to your uncle. 
   2a. Hold on a moment, please. 
   2b. Hold on a moment, I’ll come soon. 
3. That’s very kind of you. 
   3a. It’s very kind of you to come and see me. 
   3b. Thanks very much. It’s very kind of you. 
4. I would like to see him as soon as possible. 
   4a. Would you come and get it as quickly as possible? 
   4b. Tell them the news as early as possible. 
   4c. Please give me a call as soon as you’re back.
5 Sorry, I’m free every day except today. ฉันว่างชีวิตไม่มีวันเสาร์และอาทิตย์
5a The children go to school every day except Saturday and Sunday. น้องๆนั่งเรียนทุกวันไม่มีวันเสาร์และอาทิตย์

6 The boy can speak some everyday English. น้องชายเขาพูดภาษาอังกฤษที่ใช้ประจำวัน
6a Are you able to come tomorrow? คุณจะมาได้พรุ่งนี้
6b I was able to catch what he said. ฉันฟังเข้าใจได้

7 Between eight and nine. ระหว่างแปดและเก้า
7a What’s the difference between them? ทำนายว่ามีต่างอย่างอย่างไร

8 He says that he won’t be free until tomorrow. 他说他直到明天才会有空
8a They say (that) they’ve studied at this school for two years. พวกเขาบอกว่าเขาเรียนที่โรงเรียนนี้มาอย่างน้อยสองปี

9 I’m afraid that Jim will miss a lot of lessons. ผมกังวลว่าโจ้จะพลาดเรียนไปจดจ่อ
9a You don’t know how I miss you. คุณไม่รู้ว่าฉันจะกังวล
9b I’m sorry I missed you at the station. ขอโทษที่ฉันพลาดคุณที่สถานี
9c He never missed a day’s work. เขาไม่เคยพลาดงานแม้แต่หนึ่งวัน

10 He may even fail his Chinese exam. เขาอาจล้มเหลวในการสอบภาษาจีน
10a They failed to reach there on time. พวกเขาหาไม่ถึงที่นั้นในเวลาที่กำหนด
10b He failed to keep his word. เขาไม่สามารถรักษาคำสัญญา
10c It’s true that he may fall behind the other students. ลูกน้องเขาจะหลงหล้าจากเพื่อนร่วมห้องเรียน

11 It’s true that we’ll go and work on a farm. จริงที่เราจะไปทำงานที่นา
11a I’m sure that he won’t mind. ฉันมั่นใจว่าเขาไม่ใช่

12 Of course, we can learn by ourselves. แน่ๆเรารู้จะเรียนด้วยตัวเอง

13 They went swimming every day during the summer holidays. พวกเขาว่ายน้ำทุกวันในช่วงหยุดยาว
Unit 11 A great inventor

Useful Expressions

1. It’s a bad line. [It’s a bad telephone line connection.]
2. send away
3. try out
4. send for
5. turn down

Grammar

Infinitive verbs.

1. The doctor wanted to operate.
   1a She wanted to borrow my radio.
   1b They wanted to get home before it got dark.
   1c My father wants me to be a doctor.
2. Tell her to turn it down.
   2a Ask him to come quickly.
   2b She asked me to help her with the housework.
3. When did you begin to study French?
4. I see him pass here every day.

Text Explanation

1. What do you call them in English?
2. Some of these inventions have changed the world more than others.
3. Which of these do you think is the most useful invention?
   3a Which of these would you most like to own?
   3b Lhamo’s uncle owns this land. He’s a good farmer.
4 The boy had so many strange questions.

5 The teacher could not answer all of them.

5a I don’t know all of them.

5a I know none of them.

6 Not everyone can work out the problem.

7 She found that he was a very good pupil.

7a We’ve had five lessons. I find them easy.

7b I think it easy to do it by myself.

7c I feel it hard to finish the work in two days.

8 You’ll have to build it yourself.

8a We must study hard for our country’s development.

9 With the money he bought things for his lab.

9a She sent for a doctor.

10 I can’t see clearly enough.

10a I have enough time to read the book.

10b He operated on her at once, and Zhaxi’s mother was saved.

11 Come to my home tomorrow if possible.

11a A: When will you use my bike?

B: Now if possible.

12 She said (that) hers has broken.

12a Her radio has stopped working.

13 I went into the workshop and saw them breaking down the machine.
Useful Expressions

1. Have you changed your mind? តើអ្នកមានព្រាងថ្មីទេ?
2. I don’t mind. ខ្ញុំមិនបានបញ្ហាបញ្ហា។
3. Could you do something for me, please? អ្នកអាចធ្វើឯកសារសម្រាប់ខ្ញុំបានឬទេ?
4. write down នឹងសរសេរ
5. make sure កុំព្យូទ័រ
6. by air ដោយការប្រកួតនៅក្នុងតោនរយៈពេល
7. come round ស្រឡាញ់ឡើងវិញ
8. in a minute ក្រោយមួយរោគ

Grammar

Object Clause (what, when, where, who, how).

1. Do you know what time the ship leaves? តើអ្នកស្គាល់ពេលណាំនិងអ្នកនឹងចុះចុះសម្រាប់ចេញនៅពេលណា?
   1a. We don’t know when we arrive. យើងក៏ដោយដឹងពេលដើមយបានចូលរួម។
   1b. Tell me what time you get up every day. ពេលណាអ្នកប្រឈមឡើងកាលបើអ្នកប្រឈមលើករីករាល់ថ្ងៃ។
   1c. I know who he wants to see. ខ្ញុំស្គាល់គ្មាននិយម្មដែលគាត់ចង់ឃុំ។
   1d. Please ask him when he arrived here yesterday. សូមសំរាប់អ្នកសូីម្រួលបានក្លាយនៅទីនេះមកពីម្សៅមុន។
   1e. Go and see who she is taking care of. ឯកសារឯកសារខ្ញុំនៅពេលនេះមានមេជ័យ។

2. Can you tell me where he lives? អ្នកអាចប្រឈមមិត្តកម្មមានទីដែលគាត់មាននៅសុខភាពទេ?
   2a. Could you tell me where the nearest post office is? អ្នកអាចប្រឈមដែលជាកែប្រែការដែលស្ថានីយ៍លុយតែមួយស្ថានីយ៍ាកម្មប្រជាជនឬទេ?
   2b. Can you tell me who we have to see? អ្នកអាចប្រឈមដែលគឺត្រូវតែឃុំ។
   2c. Could you tell me how we get to the place? អ្នកអាចប្រឈមដែលយើងត្រូវតែដល់ទីនេះមានមេជ័យមកពីម្សៅមុន។

Text Explanation

1. A: Could you do something for me, please? អ្នកអាចធ្វើឯកសារសម្រាប់ខ្ញុំបានឬទេ?
   B: What would you like me to do? អ្នកចង់យើងធ្វើឯកសារសម្រាប់អ្នកបានឬទេ?
   A: I’d like you to put the meat in the dish. ខ្ញុំចង់អ្នកនឹងធ្វើឯកសារសម្រាប់អ្នក។
   1a. Could you help me with English? អ្នកអាចជួយយើងនូវភាសាខ្មែរបានឬទេ?

•157•
2 Could you look after her while we’re away? Dorji’s family has been away for two weeks.

3 With pleasure! A: Are you sure you don’t mind? B: Glad to help!

4 I’ll take good care of her. We must take care of everything in school.

5 Make sure the sheep has clean water every day.

6 Please speak to her in English as much as possible every day.

7 He’ll be here in a minute.

8 They are waiting, aren’t they? You like fish, don’t you? You don’t like fish, do you? You haven’t changed your mind, have you?

9 Do you know what time their plane leaves Beijing? Could you tell me which gate we have to go to? Could you tell me what work we have to do?
Unit 13 Happy New Year

Useful Expressions

1. No news is good news.
2. How time flies!
3. sitting room
4. hear from

Grammar

Infinitive verbs.

1. They climbed up the hill to see the whole city clearly.
   - Infinitive verbs can be used with “once,” “twice,” “never,” “ever,” “several times,” and “many times” to express time.

   1a. Who will come to visit our school?
   1b. To catch the early bus, he got up at five o’clock.

2. “Have been to” and “have been in” can be used with “once,” “twice,” “never,” “ever,” “several times,” and “many times” to express time.

   2a. A: Have you ever been to Xi’an?
      B: I have been there twice.

   “Have been in”

   2b. He has been in Beijing.
   2c. His brother has been in the army since he finished middle school.
   2d. He has been in Sichuan for two years.

3 Object Clause.

   3a. He said (that) it was very cold in Yushu.
   3b. She said that there were hundreds of people at the horse race.
4 Comparison of “have been to” and “have gone to.”

4a She’s gone to Rebgon. (She hasn’t returned yet.)

4b She’s been to Rebgon. (She went there once.)

Text Explanation

1 He’s gone to England with his family. (The good news made almost everyone feel pleasant.)

1a They’ve gone to the Great Wall. Have you ever been there? (It is almost as tall as the room.)

1b Have you received a letter from Dawa yet? (He will work on a new book during his holiday.)

2 How time flies. (You won’t forget to post the letter, will you?)

2a How happy you look! (How fast a spaceship flies!)

2b How fast a spaceship flies! (Have you been to the United States?)

2c What a beautiful flower it is! (She’s gone to Rebgon. (She went there once.)

3 Please give them all my best wishes. (Comparison of)

3a Best wishes to you! (He’s gone to England with his family.)

4 Is she very unhappy without me? (Remember to tell him about this.)

4a I can’t finish the work without your help. (What a beautiful flower it is!)

5 Don’t forget to give her some food and change her water, will you? (She’s been to Rebgon. (She went there once.)

5a Remember to tell him about this. (Please give them all my best wishes.)

5b You won’t forget to post the letter, will you? (He’s been to Rebgon. (She went there once.)

6 He will work on a new book during his holiday. (He’s gone to England with his family.)

6a I believe that they will work hard on herding. (It is almost as tall as the room.)

6b I will have to choose presents for all the family soon, but I haven’t chosen any yet. (The good news made almost everyone feel pleasant.)

7 Mum slept almost the whole way. (It is almost as tall as the room.)

7a It is almost as tall as the room. (The good news made almost everyone feel pleasant.)

7b The good news made almost everyone feel pleasant.
8 We’ve seen several members of the family since we arrived.

8a You’ll have to finish the exercises before class is over.

9 It is now standing in the corner of our sitting room.

9a The shop is just at the corner of the street.

10 He said that he was working hard on his Chinese.

10a A: What did Nima say in his letter?

B: He said that he was going to return in two weeks.

10b He said that he hadn’t bought any yet.
Useful Expressions

1 kind-hearted ขยันทำดี
2 dress-up แต่งตัว
3 look-up ค้น
4 on top of บน

Text Explanation

1 My grandparents are very kind-hearted. นักเรียนวัยดินดอน
นักเรียนที่มีใจดีให้แก่ทุกคน
1a You are sad-hearted. Why? ไม่สบายใจจริงๆเหรอ?
2 The plane landed safely. ลูกยางร่อนอย่างปลอดภัย
2a The bird landed on top of the house. นกอินทรีร่อนอยู่บนหลังคา
2b He fills each of the bowls with beef. ผู้ชายเติมข้าวOCUSในตัว
3 When they were young, Mr. Green sometimes dressed up in a red coat. ครอบครัวสุขภาพดี
ชุดตุ๊กตาบุกเบิกสีแดง
3a All the girls dressed up for the party. นักเรียนหญิงมามา
3b When we were young, we dressed up in new robes during Tibetan New Year. ครอบครัวสุขภาพดี
ชุดตุ๊กตาบุกเบิกสีแดง
4 Now look up the words in a dictionary. ดูคำ典
5 They met at the school gate and said hello to each other. โรงเรียน
5a The children told each other to try not to sleep on Losar Eve. นักเรียน
5b They met at the school gate and said hello to each other. โรงเรียน
6 You’re never too old to enjoy Christmas. คริสต์มาส
6a You are too young to understand such things. คริสต์มาส
6b He couldn’t wait to tell them the good news. คริสต์มาส
7 Let’s help each other, shall we? ครอบครัวสุขภาพดี
7a It’s from England, isn’t it? คริสต์มาส
7b You are new, aren’t you? คริสต์มาส
7c Uncle Jantso will be free next week, won’t he? คริสต์มาส
7d The children can’t ride horses, can they? คริสต์มาส
Unit 15 At home with the twins

Useful Expressions

1 What can I do for you? ཨི་ཐོང་བཞིན་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་
2 I would like to make friends with her. པོ་པོ་དི་མཐོང་འདི་བཞི་
3 I won’t make a mistake if you teach me well. ལྷུང་ཐོང་ཐོང་བཞི་ཐོང་སྒུགས་སོང་བཞི་
4 I can’t decide which one to buy. བོད་ོད་ལོ་བཞི་ཧོ་ཞི་
5 Would you like to try it on before you buy it? བོད་ོད་ལོ་བཞི་ཧོ་ཞི་
6 Those trousers are not large enough for him. བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་་
7 That new leather coat is not cheap. བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་་
8 Please take your time! བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་་
9 I get on well with all my classmates. བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་་
10 I’ll visit you right away. བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་
11 No hurry! བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་

Text Explanation

1 Father: Do we need some more tea? བོད་པོ་པོ་ལོ་བཞི་
   Mother: Yes. I think we do. བོད་པོ་ལོ་གཞི་བཞི་
   1a A: Do you need one more cup of milk tea? བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་
       B: Yes. I think I do. Ask Cairang to get some more. བོད་པོ་ལོ་ཁོ་མི་བཞི་
       1b A: Would you like some cheese? བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་
           B: Yes. I would like some, please. བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་

2 Lucy: Mom, can’t Lily do it? It’s her turn! བོད་པོ་ཐོང་སྒུགས་སོང་བཞི་
   Mother: So it is! Lily did you hear what I said? བོད་པོ་ྲི་བཞི་
   2a Lhamo: Can’t Cairang herd the livestock alone? It’s his turn. བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་
       Dad: So it is! Cairang, did you hear what I said? བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་
       2b Lhamo: Didn’t you hear me, Zhashi? It’s your turn to fetch the water! བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་
           Zhashi: So it is. I’ll do it at once. བོད་པོ་བོད་བཞི་
3 He asked whether they needed some more tea. 通常我们必需在每一小时里检查一次
3a The headmaster asked whether the new students came from Lhasa. 西藏的头部学校
3b Uncle Danba asked whether they liked his new robe. 阿当爷爷问我们是否喜欢他的新
3c People often ask whether I like being a twin. 人们经常问我是否喜欢双胞胎

4 Usually we get on very well with each other. 通常我们非常合得来
4a It is very important to get on well with each other. 与别人和睦相处非常重
4b How are you getting on with your English study? 你在英语上怎么样？

5 But people still mistake us for each other. 但是人们仍然会把我们误
5a I am very sorry that I mistook your meaning. 非常抱歉我误会了你的意思
5b You must tell him that he has made a great mistake. 你必须告诉他他犯了大

6 Can’t we be different from each other sometimes? 为什么我们不能不
6a These two sheep look the same, but they are different from each other in many ways. 这
6b Do you know the new singer? His way of singing is different from Debi’s. 你知

7 Sometimes, my grandma decides to buy a big birthday present for both of us. 有时我的
7a Lhamo decided to travel to Lhasa with her father during this summer holiday. 莱
7b Both brothers decided to put up a tent in the mountains. 两个兄弟决定在山上

8 We can’t decide who should open it first. 我们不能决定谁先开
8a Please tell me who should ferment the yoghurt. 请告诉我谁应该
8b She decided that she should drive the sheep home earlier than usual. 她决定

•164•
Shall I ask the shopkeeper if I can try it on?

You should try on the boots before you decide to buy them.

May I try on that red hat before I decide if I want to buy it?

Grammar

The Object Clause (4)

1 How to use whether and if. || Whether информацию

‘Whether’ and ‘if’ are used to express a condition.

1a She asked if / whether I wanted more mutton.

1b She asks if / whether I have a new Tibetan robe.

1c The village leaders discussed if / whether we should fight for the grassland.

1d The lama isn’t sure whether / if there will be a religious gathering.

2 How to use too and either. || Too информация

‘Either’ and ‘too’ are used to express a condition.

2a Here are two horses, you can choose either (one or the other).

2b Either of you can come to my house.

2c Trees are budding on either side of the street.

2d His hands rested on either side of her shoulders.

2e Cairang hasn’t finished his homework. Doma hasn’t, either.

2f Nima didn’t agree to fetch water. Yangzom didn’t agree, either.

‘Too’ is used to express a condition.

2g Uncle Danba has bought a red horse. Uncle Danzen has bought one, too.

2h Doma likes butter tea. Cairang likes it, too.
Unit 16 What’s it made of?

Useful Expressions

1 My sword is made of metal and it was made in Nepal. ฉันจะเจ้าเก็บปืนที่ผมมีแล้วผมทำโดยไม่ได้มาจากเนปาล.

2 A corral is used for keeping the animals. โรงเก็บสัตว์เป็นที่ใช้ในการจัดการสัตว์.

3 English is used by many people in the world as their mother tongue. ภาษาอังกฤษถูกใช้เป็นภาษาที่มั่นคงของพวกเขาและเป็นภาษาที่ใช้ใน many countries.

4 Tibetan art is popular around the world. ศิลปะที่นับถือจากภูฏานได้รับความนิยมทั่วโลก.

Text Explanation

1 What’s it made of? นี่ถูกทำจากอะไร?

1a What are the prayer beads made of? ปีก BBBBBB

1b Prayer beads are usually made of sandalwood. ปีก BBBB

2 Find the names of the five countries where English is spoken as the first language.

2a The Qinghai-Tibet Plateau is well known as the roof of the world. ภูฏานที่ใหญ่ที่สุด.

2b The yak is known as the boat of the Plateau. นรายที่เป็นเรือของภูฏาน.

3 Which language is spoken by the largest number of people in the world?

3a What kind of religious entertainment is performed in your village during the New Year? ผู้คนที่นี่มีการจัดงานทางศาสนาในช่วงเทศกาลปีใหม่.

3b What Tibetan dialects are spoken in Tibetan areas? ผู้คนที่นี่พูดภาษาทางพื้นที่.

4 English is the first language in none of these countries.

4a Seafood and chicken are popular in none of the villages of my home county. อาหารทะเลและไก่ได้รับความนิยมในหลายแห่ง.

4b Skyscrapers are present in none of the grassland areas I’ve visited. บันไดเมืองที่ผมไปทั้งหมดไม่มีเจ้าเหล่านี้.
Most business letters around the world are written in English, because it is so widely used. If you had even a little money, you’d find it easy to persuade her.

Tsamba is one of the Tibetan people’s popular foods, because it is so nutritious and convenient. Lhabrang is one of the famous monasteries in Amdo, because of its long history.

English is spoken as the first language by most people in the USA. Mani is recited as a mantra essence by most Tibetan people in China. My engagement was decided by my father just before he died.

Most business letters around the world are written in English. Most Tibetan authors’ works are related to Buddhism.

If you learn even a little English, you’ll find it useful after you leave school. If you speak even a little Tibetan, you’ll find it easy when you travel in Tibetan places. If you had even a little money, you’d find it easy to persuade her.
Grammar

The Passive Voice and the Active Voice.

The Passive Voice is used to show that an action is done by someone or something other than the subject. It is formed by using the verb "be" with the past participle of the main verb. The basic structure is "subject + be + past participle of the main verb + by + agent.

1 Past Simple.

1a The government repaired the old bridge last year.

1b The old bridge was repaired by the government last year.

2 Simple Future.

2a Many pine trees will be planted around the monastery by the end of next year.

3 Present simple.

3a Mountain god altar sites are chosen by lamas.

3b Mountain god altar sites are chosen by whom?

4 Present Perfect tense.

4a I have made many sacrificial fires.

4b Many sacrificial fires have been made by me.

Many sacrificial fires have been made by me. "by" indicates the agent.

4b I have made many sacrificial fires. "by" indicates the agent.

By the end of next year, many pine trees will be planted around the monastery. "by" indicates the agent.

Many pine trees will be planted around the monastery by the end of next year. "by" indicates the agent.

Many pine trees have been planted around the monastery by the end of next year. "by" indicates the agent.

Many pine trees have been planted around the monastery by the end of next year. "by" indicates the agent.
Unit 17 What was it used for?

Useful Expressions

1 Can you tell me the way to the Nationalities Press? นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
2 You can’t miss it. นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
3 Please turn left / right at the (third) crossing. นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ / นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
4 Have you seen those military weapons on show in the museum? นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ

Text Explanation

1 What was it used for? นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
1a What is a wooden bucket used for? นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
1b It is used for milking female yaks. นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
2 Can you tell me the way to the museum, please? นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
2a Can you tell me the way to Kumbum Monastery, please? นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
2b Go along Number One Road until you reach the big intersection, cross the intersection, turn left, and then you will find a bus station where you can find many buses to Kumbum. You can’t miss it! นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
3 It says here, on the card, that it was used in plays. นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
3a It says here, in the book, that the Potala Palace was established during King Songzangambo’s reign. นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
3b The tour guide explained to us that Shakyamuni’s life was depicted on the monastery walls. นิยที่นิยการหมิมาในวารสารภาษาต่างประเทศ
4 These days we use a thermos. 

4a These days we use vehicles instead of yaks in many Amdo areas. 

4b In the old days we used to use prayer flags as victory flags, but now we use them in religious activities. 

5 Some of the things were hundreds of years old. 

5a Most of the nomad girls are married at the age of seventeen. 

5b Some of the Tibetan teachers are specialized in the Gesar epic. 

6 The group of girls moved on and had a good time together in the park. 

6a The flock of wild geese flew down to the lake and rested for the night. 

6b The herd of wild yaks left their winter pasture in the mountains and moved down to the valley. 

Grammar 

The Passive Voice- (2) 

1 Statement 

1a Tibetan writing was invented by Sambhota in the seventh century. 

1b Tibetan was spoken in my hometown when I was a child. 

2 Questions 

2a What was invented by Sambhota? 

2b What language was spoken in your hometown when you were a little child?
Useful Expressions

1. This tea’s salt content is just right.
2. The more you study, the better you will become.
3. He can more or less communicate in English.
4. Lhasa is far away from my village.
5. Some old people in our village say we must stop the animals from coming to the crop fields.

Text Explanation

1. Come to school in your old clothes tomorrow.
   1a. Some muscular young Tibetan men came to dance gracefully in their unique robes.
   1b. Come to the meeting tomorrow in your best robe.
2. The ground must be just right, neither too wet nor too dry.
   2a. The boots must be just right, neither too large nor too small.
   2b. Neither of us speaks Tibetan.
3. Pound a long stick into the earth next to the hole. Make sure that it is straight.
   3a. Pound a nail into the wall next to the doorframe. Make sure that it is strong enough to hang the picture from.
   3b. Push this cart to the field near the road. Make sure that the cart is full of manure.
4. Put the tree in the hole so that it is straight.
   4a. Put more clothes on so that you will not feel cold.
   4b. Fence the grassland so that the animals won’t starve in the winter.
5. A lot of good land has gone with them, leaving only sand.
5a Many young men leave our village every spring, leaving only the women and girls. (5) ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་བོད་དཔེ་རླབས་ཐུབ་པར་བཟོད་ཀྱི་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཚེ་བ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚ་བ་) ।

5b All the old people left the party, leaving only the young people to sing love songs. (5) བཅེའི་བཟོད་ཀྱི་བོད་དཔེ་རླབས་ཐུབ་པར་བཅེའི་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཚེ་བ་བཅེའི་�ིའི་ཚེ་ལོག་བཅེའི་ཚ་བ་)

6 Today, too many trees are still being cut down in the USA. (6) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

6a Nowadays, Tibetan studies is being taught all over the world. (6) སྣ་ཚོགས་བོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་དབེ་བྱིན་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བ་ཕྲ་བས་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

6b Today, many children are still being kept by their parents from attending schools. (6) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

7 They must be built all over the world. (7) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

7a Our temple should be finished by the end of this year. (7) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

7b Pine trees must be planted along the bank of this river. (7) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

8 But we're growing a lot more now, thanks to the Green Wall. (8) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

8a Animal husbandry in my hometown has been very successful, thanks to animal scientists. (8) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

8b My brother won the prize in the horse racing, thanks to our steed. (8) ལ་ཁྲི་གཏོབ་བ་ལྟར་མི་མཁན་མེད་པའི་ཐུབ་པར་བྱིན་ཏུ་བཟོད་ཀྱི་ཚེ་ལོག་) ।

Grammar ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་

1. The Passive Voice. ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   1a He can speak Chinese. (1) ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   1b She should be here by nine. (1) ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   “not” ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   1c He shouldn’t be late. (1) ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   1d They might not come to the party. (1) ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   1e He will can go with us. (1) ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।

   1f She must would study very hard. (1) ཐིག་པའི་དབེ་བས་(1) ।
1g Many trees should be planted.

1h The ritual may be completed tomorrow.

1i The old bridge must be repaired by Tibetan New Year.

2. Measurement

2a My swimming pool is only two meters deep.

2b This history book is just five centimetres thick.

2c Our village’s threshing ground is about two kilometres wide.

2d My grandpa is seventy-nine years old.

2e That stupa is sixty meters tall.

2f The surrounding wall of this temple is three meters high.
Unit 19 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1. How long does it take to go to Lhasa by train / bus / horse / airplane / foot? 拉薩

2. How far away is Kumbum from Ziling? 拉薩布達拉宮從哲爾森有多遠?

3. Don’t drink all the time. 永遠不要喝多!

4. Many eagles began hovering in space after the wolf killed the sheep. 西藏金鷹在太空紛紛飛舞

5. So far as I know no Tibetans can speak Russian. 依舊大家都知道西藏人不會說俄語

6. There is something wrong with the milking machine, it doesn’t work any more. 這牛奶機有問題,已經無法使用了

Text Explanation

1. Many of the stars can’t be seen because they are too far away. 西藏的很多星星因為太遠而無法看到

1a. Many Tibetan ancient books can’t be read because they are too incomprehensible. 西藏的很多古代书籍因看不懂而無法閱讀

1b. Some of the mountains can’t be climbed because they are too high to climb. 西藏的一些山因為太高無法攀登

2. So far no man has travelled further than the moon. 依舊人類從未到達過月球

2a. So far Tibetan students didn’t take any interest in computers. 依舊西藏學生對電腦沒有興趣

2b. So far no human beings have ever visited Mars. 依舊人類從未到達過火星

3. Man-made satellites have been sent up into space by several countries. 依舊很多國家把人造衛星送到太空

3a. Lots of wind-horses have been thrown up into the air during the ritual. 依舊很多仲巴覺馬(風馬)在儀式中被飛升到天空

3b. Many schools in Tibetan areas have been repaired. 依舊西藏地區的學校已經被修復
4 Older people must be spoken to politely.

4a Beginning language learners must be talked to slowly and clearly.

4b Tibetan people’s living standard should be improved by Tibetans.

5 Which channel is it on? It’s usually found on channel four.

5a Which shop sells good wool cloth? The shop on the corner usually does.

5b Which household makes the best Tibetan boots? The household near the village entrance usually makes the best boots.

Grammar

Passive Voice. ภูมิการณ์ที่เป็นการแก้ไขภูมิการณ์ของผู้ที่ไม่ใช่ผู้ผลิตภูมิการณ์

“Subject+Be(present)+past participate”

1a Most of the subjects are taught in Chinese in many schools.

1b Most of the temple dances are performed by monks.

1c Barley is grown on the Qinghai-Tibet Plateau.
Unit 20 The world’s population

Useful expressions

1 It goes on, hour after hour. 
2 The population grows faster and faster. 
3 Standing room only!
4 At the beginning of this term, I was planning to study very hard, but I couldn’t. 
5 Hundreds of languages are spoken on the earth nowadays. 
6 Education is very important in less / more developed countries. 
7 UN (the United Nations) Headquarters is in New York. 
8 What’s the population of Tibet?

Text Explanation

1 The world’s population. 
   1a What’s the population of Qinghai Province? 
   1b Chengdu has a large population among the Chinese cities.

2 By what year will the world’s population reach 6 billion? 
   2a By what year will you be able to speak English fluently? 
   2b By what year will you be married?

3 Standing room only. 
   3a The temple’s central hall is full of monks, there is no room for villagers. 
   3b The big bus was so crowded that there was hardly any standing room for me.
4 So it goes on, hour after hour. (དེ་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བརྟེན་མི་)
4a The rite goes on, hour after hour. (རིག་པ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བརྟེན་མི་)
4b The argument between those two families goes on, generation after generation. (གཟིགས་དབང་ཞིབས་མ་
དེ་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བརྟེན་མི་)

5 Just think how many more there will be in one year. (ཐལ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(ཐལ་ཐལ་)དམིགས་པ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བརྟེན་མི་)
5a Would you like to guess how many Tibetans there will be at my Christmas party this year? (ཐལ་ཏེ་ཐལ་(ཐལ་ཐལ་)འེ་
ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
5b Just think how many more times you could talk to me in a year if you had a telephone. (ཐལ་ཏེ་ཐལ་(ཐལ་ཐལ་)
འེ་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)

6 There will not be enough space for anybody else. (མི་ལ་མི་ལ་(མི་མི་)དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
6a There is not enough space in the shed for the livestock when it rains. (རང་ལ་ལ་(རང་ལ་)འི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
6b There is enough space in this notebook for you to write the rest down. (སོ་ཕོ་བུ་ཕོ་(སོ་ཕོ་ཕོ་)བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེའི་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)

Grammar དོན་དཔྱོད་གནས།

1. The Future in the Past Tense. (དབང་བུ་བཅོས་རྡོ་རྗེ་)
   དེ་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་ཐལ་ཏེ་ཐལ་(དེ་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དེ་བུ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
   “Would” ་“was going to” ་ཐལ་ཏེ་ཐལ་
   1a I didn’t know if / whether my horse would run away. (དཔེ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(དཔེ་ཏེ་དཔེ་)ད་པེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
   1b I was not sure whether / if the prayer flag was going to fall down. (དཔེ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(དཔེ་ཏེ་དཔེ་)ད་པེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
   1c Villagers never knew that the horse racing would become the festival’s focus. (དཔེ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(དཔེ་ཏེ་དཔེ་)ད་པེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
   1d My boyfriend never asked what was going to happen to us after we separated. (དཔེ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(དཔེ་ཏེ་དཔེ་)ད་པེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
   1e She didn’t tell me where she would go. (དཔེ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(དཔེ་ཏེ་དཔེ་)ད་པེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
   1f He didn’t tell me when he was coming. (དཔེ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(དཔེ་ཏེ་དཔེ་)ད་པེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
   1g I didn’t know where the tent was. (དཔེ་ཏེ་ཐལ་ཏེ་(དཔེ་ཏེ་དཔེ་)ད་པེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་དཔེ་ཐབས་ཀྱིས་རུ་སོ་། །མི་ལ་བཞིན་བཟོ་བཅོས་མི་)
2 Numbers

100 one hundred

130 one hundred and thirty

1,000 one thousand

1,340 one thousand three hundred and forty

10,000 ten thousand

20,053 twenty thousand and fifty three

100,000 one hundred thousand

120,340 one hundred and twenty thousand three hundred and forty

1,000,000 one million

100,300,000 one hundred million and three hundred thousand

1,000,000,000 one billion

10,400,006,000 ten billion four hundred million and six thousand

100,000,000,000 one hundred billion
Unit 21 Shopping

Useful expressions དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།

1 What can I do for you? དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
2 Can I help you? དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
3 How much do they cost? (How much is it?) དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
4 Just a moment, please! དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
5 My boots are worn out. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
6 That Tibetan scholar is busy collecting some well known authors’ works. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
7 I’d like a bit of sugar on my rice. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
8 It’s important to think about your future. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
9 He looks at the painting in surprise. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
10 My mule fell over a cliff and died last month. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
11 That shop is selling out its nice robes quickly. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
12 The students in our class are either too big or too small for these shirts. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
13 What size do you want? དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།

Text Explanation དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།

1 The shop was quite new, for it had opened only the week before. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
1a His written Tibetan is extremely good, for he has studied Tibetan at Tibet University. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
1b This sweater is quite good, for it is made from wool. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
2 They were either too big or too small. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
2a The students in our class are either too big or too small. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
2b The robes in that shop are either too big or too small; not one is suitable. དུས་པའི་ཐོན་ཕྲུལ།
The two friends were pleased to see each other again. We were so busy talking that I forgot to pay!

The suit was so expensive that he couldn’t buy it.

When I returned to my home my guests had already gone.

The horse was so fast that no one could recognize who the rider was.

It was so cold in the mountains that many yaks were frozen to death.

They scolded her so badly that she nearly cried.

Grammar

1 The Past Perfect Tense

We were so busy talking that I forgot to pay!

My girlfriend was so delighted in meeting me that she kissed me several times.

I am so busy collecting these folktales that I hardly have any time to relax.

"Subject+had+past participate" is "Subject+had (have/has/had)+past participle"
Unit 22 At the doctor’s

Useful expressions

1 I don’t feel very well.
2 I have got a headache and a cough.
3 There’s something wrong with the radio.
4 It’s nothing serious.
5 You’ll be all right/well soon.
6 Take this medicine twice a day.

Text Explanation

1 You’d better stay in bed till tomorrow.
  1a You’d better drive the animals to the spring in winter.
  1b You’d better shear the sheep twice a year.
2 Perhaps she’s caught a cold.
  2a Perhaps I’ve got a serious fever.
  2b Perhaps this machine has got a problem.
3 You’d better not go to school.
  3a You’d better not leave the yaks alone in the mountains in the winter.
  3b You’d better not miss the rite.
4 Have you taken his temperature?
  4a Taking one’s temperature is something that the nurses usually do.
  4b I would like to take my temperature when I have a cold.
5 His temperature seems to be all right.
  5a He seems to be satisfied with his success in his studies.
  5b The old woman in the picture seems to be my grandmother.
6 How long has he been like this? जैनकली स्पष्ट रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

6a He has been in poor health like this for two weeks. जैनकली स्पष्ट रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

6b I have been to America several times. राजस्थान स्पष्ट रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

**Grammar परीक्षण गतिज हिमालय**

1 **The Present Perfect Tense. गतिज हिमालय**

| The students have finished my homework. | गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?
| She hasn’t eaten lunch. | गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?
| She has been to Tibet several times. | गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?
| I have eaten at that restaurant only one time. | गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?
| I have lived in this city since 1989. | गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?
| I have studied music for one year. | गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

2 How to use **since** and **for.** “Since” जैनकली स्पष्ट रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

**“Since”** जैनकली स्पष्ट रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

2a I have lived in America since 1983. गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

2b He has learned music since June. गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

**“For”** जैनकली स्पष्ट रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

2c I have been here for ten minutes. गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?

2d I have lived here for two years. गुरुत्वाकर्षित रूप से कितना काल बिताया?
Using the Simple Past versus the Present Perfect.

3a I was in Japan ten years ago / in 1990 / when I was a child.

3b I have been in Japan several times / one time.

4 The Infinitive.

4a He didn’t know whom to ask / what to do.

4b She doesn’t know where to go / how to get to your tent.

4c I have something to give you.

4d A: Do you want anything to drink?  B: Yes, some tea, please!
Useful Expressions

1 Did you have a good journey?
2 Play as well as you can.
3 Keep on chanting.
4 I feel afraid of forests and mountains when the nights are dark and stormy.
5 Please come to class on time.
6 Who is on the team?

Text Explanation

1 It’s a long time since we met last!
   a It has been a long time since they built this temple.
   b A long time has passed since their divorce.

2 You are just in time for the football match.
   a Being on time is something that the students should do.
   b You are just in time to have some hot mutton!

3 The team has already been chosen.
   a Roads have already been made into remote areas.
   b A Tibetan style house has been built in this city.

4 Either Weihua or Ann may be on the team.
   a We have to get there either tonight or tomorrow.
   b It’s necessary to study one foreign language or computer science.
We did as he told us and won the first place in the league. We danced as she taught and got a gold medal in the competition.

By the end of the match, they had kicked two goals and we had kicked four. By the end of last year, we had selected a new village head.

It was a draw when we played last time. The two archery teams competed all afternoon but at dusk it was still a draw. They played two games of chess and both were draws.

By the end of this term, we will make good progress in our English study.

We were playing against No. 64 Middle School. By the end of this term, we will make good progress in our English study.

The Past Perfect Tense.

The foreigner said he had never seen such beautiful scenery. By the end of last year, they had sold more than three thousand yaks.
Useful Expressions

1 My hometown is located at the foot of that snowy mountain.

2 That tall mountain peak is always covered with mist.

3 I am really interested in learning traditional music.

4 He enjoys reading novels.

5 Herdsmen spend most of the time on taking care of the livestock.

6 It takes a long time to draw a painting well.

7 None of the villagers can speak Chinese.

8 There are hardly any Tibetans who can speak three languages.

Text Explanation

1 How often do you write?

1a How often do you wear your Tibetan robe?

1b How often do you go on dates with your girlfriend?

2 Though I like writing to my pen friend, it takes a lot of time.

2a Most Tibetans like eating fat meat, though it’s not very healthy.

2b Though his horse was the best, he didn’t win the race.

3 From Sydney we flew over a line of mountains in the southeast.

3a After you have passed over a huge line of mountains, you’ll come to a lovely lake.

3b That big statue is over three hundred years old.
4 But after we left the mountains behind us, there was hardly a cloud in the sky.

4a He could hardly say anything when he heard the bad news.

4b After the snowstorm there were hardly any sheep left behind.

5 Lower down, at the foot of the Ayers Rock, most of the ground is covered with forest and grass.

5a Lower down, at the foot of the snow mountain, the land is covered with white sheep and black yaks.

5b His hands are covered with blood every time he butchers a sheep.

6 I must stop writing now, as I have rather a lot of work to do.

6a I must go home now, as my mother is waiting for me.

6b You must stop talking now, as I’m bored listening to you.

7 You can see from my photograph that I have a big smile and long hair.

7a I can tell from this essay that this author’s writing is rather good.

7b You can see from this goat’s long horns that it is quite old.

Grammar

1. Using “though.” II Though

“Though” is used to express an exception to a general truth or to show that a previous statement is not always true.

1a He failed the exam though he had studied very hard.

1b Though my family is neither too rich nor too poor, it is a happy family.
2. Using “either... or...” || Either... or...

Either ...or... 

2a You can give either the yellow or the white scarf to the lama. 

2b You may use either your left hand or your right hand.

3. Using “neither... nor...” || Neither... nor...

Neither... nor... 

3a Neither smoking nor drinking is allowed in this school. 

3b They have neither warm clothes to put on nor enough food to eat.

---

2a You can give either the yellow or the white scarf to the lama. 

2b You may use either your left hand or your right hand.

3a Neither smoking nor drinking is allowed in this school. 

3b They have neither warm clothes to put on nor enough food to eat.

---

2a You can give either the yellow or the white scarf to the lama. 

2b You may use either your left hand or your right hand.

3a Neither smoking nor drinking is allowed in this school. 

3b They have neither warm clothes to put on nor enough food to eat.
a bottle of | ལ་བོད་ཀྱི་བཤེར། | I want a bottle of beer.  ཤིང་། ལ་བོད་ཀྱི་བཤེར་བས་ནས།
a cup of | བཤེར་ཀྱི། | I want a cup of tea. ཤིང་། བཤེར་ཀྱི་བཤེར་བས་ནས།
a / er; ø/ | བོད་ཀྱི་སྐེལ། | A boy fell down and cried this morning. ཤིང་། བོད་ཀྱི་སྐེལ་བས་ནས།
a few | གཅིག | Only a few students study hard. ཤིང་། གཅིག་ལྡན་གྱི་སྐེལ་བས་ནས།
a glass of | བཤེར་ཀྱི། | He wants a glass of water. ཤིང་། བཤེར་ཀྱི་བཤེར་བས་ནས།
a little | ཅིག | I want a little sugar. ཤིང་། ཅིག་ལྡན་གྱི་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
a lot of | ཁྲིམས། | He has a lot of money. ཤིང་། ཁྲིམས་གྱི་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
a piece of | བཤེད་ཀྱི། | Please give me a piece of beef. ཤིང་། བཤེད་ཀྱི་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
a slice of | བཤེད་ཀྱི། | He ate a slice of bread with butter. ཤིང་། བཤེད་ཀྱི་ལྡན་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
able /'eibl/ | སྐྱེས་ཏེ། དབྱིས་ངན་བོད་ཀྱི། | '1 She was not able to go home. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་དབྱིས་ངན་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
found | རྐྱལ། | The able man easily found a good job. ཤིང་། རྐྱལ་ལྡན་དབྱིས་ངན་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
about /əˈbɑːt/ | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ། འལ་ལྡན་དབྱིས་ངན། | '1 He knows a lot about history. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་ལྡན་གྱི་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
away for about ten days. | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
above /əˈbʌv/ | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ། འལ་ལྡན་དབྱིས་ངན། | 'The picture is above your head. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
accept /əkˈsept/ | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ། | I accept the invitation to have dinner with them. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་དབྱིས་ངན་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
address /əˈdres/ | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ། | Please give me your new address. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་དབྱིས་ངན་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
act /ækt/ | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ། | '1 She knows how to act like a queen. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་གྱི་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
add /æd/ | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ། | Please add these numbers. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་གྱི་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
admit /əˈdɪm/ | ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ། | She had to admit she didn’t know how to cook. ཤིང་། སྐྱེས་ཏེ་ལྡན་གྱི་ལྡན་བས་ནས།
advise /ədˈvaɪz/ || I like to advise students on their careers.

aeroplane (airplane) /ˈeərəplɛn/ || I like to travel by aeroplane.

afflict /əˈflekt/ || The weather had a serious affect on his mood.

afraid /əˈfreɪd/ || We are afraid of our teacher.

after /ˈɑːftə/ || After he left I went to sleep.

afternoon /ˌɑːftəˈnɔːn/ || We have class in the afternoon.

again /əˈɡen/; oˈgɛn/ || Please say the new words again.

against /əˈgenst; əˈɡɛnst/ || The ladder leaned against the wall.

age /eɪdʒ/ || 1What is your age? 2My body began to age quickly after I reached the age of forty.

agency /əˈdʒɛnsi/ || Did you buy the ticket at the travel agency?

aggression /əˈɡresʃən/ || Aggression is a very strong emotion.

ago /əˈɡəʊ/ || My birthday was one week ago.

agree /əˈɡriː/ || I agree with my mother that I should finish my education.

agriculture /ˈægrɪkʌltʃər/ || Agriculture is the main business in the rural areas.

ah /ɑː/ || Ah yes, that is correct.

aid /eɪd/ || She came to his aid when he was sick.

aim /eɪm/ || It is my aim to become a doctor.

air /eər/ || The air is cold.

airport /eəˈpɔːt/ || The airport is a busy place during the summer.

alive /əˈlaɪv/ || If they are breathing, they are still alive.

all /ɔːl/ || 1I played basketball all afternoon. 2All of you are Chinese.

all day /ɔːl dɛri/ || I studied all day yesterday.

all night /ɔːl nɑːt/ || I slept all night.

all right /ɔːl rɑːt/ || All right, you can come with us.

all the time /ɔːl doʊ ˈtʌm/ || I try to speak English all the time.

almost /ɔːməʊst/ || 1I almost missed the train. 2Almost all of you can read and write Tibetan well.

alone /əˈləʊn/ || I was alone all of last week.
Please sing along with me.

I already finished my homework.

She also knew how to speak English.

Although he was short, he was very strong.

I always like to eat ice cream.

I am Tibetan.

You must make amends if you want to say you are sorry for what you did.

He wanted to amend the contract.

America is a country.

My teacher is an American.

They lost the war because they ran out of ammunition.

From among all the flowers, the blue ones were the most beautiful.

She told me to buy a large amount of sugar.

Ancient culture is an interesting topic for study.

There was a dead animal by the road.

They had a party for their tenth wedding anniversary.

They will announce the results of the test tomorrow.

Please have another piece of bread.

What is the answer to this question?

I can’t answer that question.

I don’t have any money.

Does anybody want to go to the store with me?

Do you want to eat anything more?

She didn’t want to apologise for her mistake.

Please appeal to your mother for permission to go with me.
appear /əˈpɪər/ | The sun did not appear from behind the clouds.
apply /əˈplai/ | Please apply what you have learned.
appoint /əˈpɔɪnt/ | I will appoint him to be the class monitor.
approve /əˈpruːv/ | Who needs to approve this request for paper supplies?

April /əˈprɔːrl/ | April is in spring.
are /əː/ | 1.Are you American? 2.We are Chinese.
area /ˈeərɪə/ | The grasslands cover a very large area.
argue /əˈɡju:/ | Don’t argue with your teacher.
arm /ɑːrm/ | Your right arm is stronger than your left arm.
arms /ɑːrmz/ | 1.They took up arms against the enemy. 2.He broke both his arms when he fell out of the tree.
army /ɑːˈmi/ | The army was very tired after fighting the battle.
around /əˈraʊnd/ | I usually eat lunch at 12:30 p.m.
arrive /əˈraɪv/ | What time will your mother arrive at the bus station?
art /ɑːt/ | He wanted to study art in school.
as /æz, əz/ | 1.He looked as if he was sick. 2.He fell as he was walking down the street.
ash /æʃ/ | There is a lot of ash in the stove.
ask /ɑːsk/ | Ask me a question.
asleep /əˈslɪp/ | I was asleep when she telephoned.
asist /əˈsɪst/ | He was asked to assist the teacher in class.
at /æt, æt/ | I usually eat lunch at 12:30 p.m.
at a bad time | I’m sorry, you have come at a bad time.
at a good time | Let’s meet later at a good time for both of us.
at first /fɜːst/ | At first please speak to me in simple English.
at home /həʊm/ | I am at home today.
at last /lɑːst/ | At last I was able to speak English well.
at night /nɑːt/ | I sleep at night.
at once /wəns/ Do you want to leave at once? ध्वनिक तुझ्याकडून विचारा
at the beginning /brˈɡɪnmən/ At the beginning, I thought learning English was difficult.

at the end of /ˈe nd/of/ At the end of class, the students were almost sleeping.

at the moment /ˈməʊmənt/ At this moment, I don’t want to eat but I probably will later.

at this time /ˈtaɪm/ At this time of the month I usually get paid.

attack /ˈætʃk/ Wolves like to attack sheep when they are hungry.

attempt /ˈætəmpt/ The assassin’s attempt on the president’s life was thwarted.

attend /ˈtend/ Will you attend the party tomorrow night?

August /ˈɔːɡəst/ August is our hottest month.

automobile /ˈɔːtəməbli/ He hopes to purchase an automobile next year.

autonomous /ˈɔːtənəməs/ Yulshul Autonomous Prefecture is in southern Qinghai Province.

autumn /ˈɔːtəm/ In autumn tree leaves turn yellow.

awake /ˈwek/ He wasn’t awake when I arrived.

award /ˈɔːrd/ She got a special award for being a good student.

B

baby /ˈbeɪbi/ My baby is two months old.

back /bæk/ At six o’clock, go back home.

bad /bæd/ He is a bad student.

bag /bæɡ/ My bag is blue.
We lost our ball. We need to go to the bank to get some money. We planted trees along the river bank this morning.

They gave her a balloon as a gift. Put the grass in the basket. That new basketball costs more than I can afford.

They planted trees along the river bank this morning. It's always nice to spend the day at the beach. That disco music has a strong beat. Where did you study before you came here? He asked the young women to come and dance before him.

I believe that tomorrow it will snow. Our class is over when the bell rings. That cow does not belong to that family. It is not good to betray a friend.
better /'bɛtə/ | ˌbeθə | Her English was better than his.
between /br'twɪ:n/ | ˌbrɛθən | I want to sit in between those two girls.
bicycle /'baɪskl/ | ˌbaɪsəkl | This is my brother’s bicycle.
big /bɪɡ/ | ˌbaɪɡ | The big black yak ran across the grassland.
bike /baɪk/ | ˌbaɪk | This is my brother’s bicycle.
big /bɪɡ/ | ˌbaɪɡ | The big black yak ran across the grassland.
bicycles /baɪsɪklz/ | ˌbaɪsɪəklz | His body felt cold in the wind.
bones /bəʊnz/ | ˌbəʊnz | The necklace is made out of yak bone.
book /bʊk/ 1 · where is your book? 2 · Where is your book?
bookseller /'bʊksɛlə/ 1 · Where is the bookseller? 2 · Ask the bookseller how much this book costs.
bookshop /'bʊkʃɒp/ 1 · Do you want to buy a book at the bookshop?
border /ˈbɔːda/ 1 · There are always police at the border. 2 · Where is the border?
born /bɔrn/ 1 · The calf was born last night. 2 · The calf was born last night.
borrow /bɔrəʊ/ 1 · May I borrow some money from you? 2 · May I borrow some money from you?
both /bəʊθ/ 1 · We both want to go to the movies. 2 · We both want to go to the movies.
bottle /ˈbɔtl/ 1 · This bottle is small. 2 · This bottle is small.
bottom /ˈbɔtəm/ 1 · The coin sank to the bottom of the well. 2 · The coin sank to the bottom of the well.
box /bɒks/ 1 · The box has some chalk. 2 · The box has some chalk.
boy /bɔɪ/ 1 · The boy is not tall. 2 · The boy is not tall.
brain /breɪn/ 1 · He had a brain disease and died. 2 · He had a brain disease and died.

breave /brɛv/ 1 · He is a very brave man. 2 · He is a very brave man.
bread /bred/ 1 · I eat bread for breakfast. 2 · I eat bread for breakfast.
breacl /breɪk/ 1 · Halfway through class we take a break. 2 · Don’t break my radio. 3 · Don’t break my radio.
breathe /breɪð/ 1 · I could hear the horses breathing heavily. 2 · I could hear the horses breathing heavily.
bridget /brɪdʒ/ 1 · Many men worked to build that bridge. 2 · Many men worked to build that bridge.
brief /briːf/ 1 · His speech was quite brief. 2 · His speech was quite brief.
right /brɪt/ 1 · The light was so bright that I had to shut my eyes. 2 · The light was so bright that I had to shut my eyes.
bring /brɪŋ/ 1 · What are you going to bring to the party? 2 · What are you going to bring to the party?
broadcast /ˈbrɔːrkast/ 1 · The television will broadcast a soccer game tonight at eight o’clock. 2 · The television will broadcast a soccer game tonight at eight o’clock.
broken /ˈbrʊkən/ 1 · The bottle is broken. 2 · The bottle is broken.
broom /bruːm/ 1 · Our classroom has a broom. 2 · Our classroom has a broom.
brother /ˈbrʌðə/ 1 · He is my brother. 2 · He is my brother.
built /bɪlt/ 1 · My father built a nice house for our family. 2 · My father built a nice house for our family.
bull /bʊl/ 1 · The bull was standing alone in the field. 2 · The bull was standing alone in the field.
bullet /ˈbʊlɪt/ 1 · That gun only has one bullet in it. 2 · That gun only has one bullet in it.
burn /bɜːrn/ || The paper quickly began to burn.
burst /bɜːrст/ || The sunlight burst through the clouds after the rainstorm.
bury /ˈbɜːri/ || We had to bury the dog after it died.
bus /bʌs/ || Will you ride the bus to town?
bus station /ˈbʌstʃən/ || I will buy my bus ticket at the bus station.
business /ˈbɪznəs/ || He went to town to do some business.
bury /ˈbɜːri/ || We had to bury the dog after it died.
business /ˈbɪznəs/ || He went to town to do some business.
burst /bɜːst/ || The sunlight burst through the clouds after the rainstorm.
burst /bɜːst/ || The sunlight burst through the clouds after the rainstorm.
bus /bʌs/ || Will you ride the bus to town?
bus station /ˈbʌstʃən/ || I will buy my bus ticket at the bus station.
by the way /ˈbʌtɪðəwei/ || By the way, I forgot to tell you about class yesterday.
by /bai/ || "Bye. See you this afternoon." "नम्ब्रिट निर्दिष्टु रुपमा" 
come /kəm/ || The calf was very hungry.
cancel /ˈkænsəl/ || They had to cancel class because the teacher was ill.
care /keə/ || We need to care for the sheep.
calm /kæm/ || The lake was calm after the storm.
can /kæn; kən/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
cancelling /ˈkænsəling/ || I will call you on the phone tonight.
can /kæn/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
camera /ˈkæmərə/ || I want to take a picture with my new camera.
can /kæn; kən/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
can /kæn; kən/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
can /kæn; kən/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
cancer /ˈkænsər/ || Cancer is a serious illness.
cancelling /ˈkænsəling/ || I will call you on the phone tonight.
cancel /ˈkænsəl/ || They had to cancel class because the teacher was ill.
can /kæn/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
calming /ˈkæmlŋ/ || I will call you on the phone tonight.
can /kæn; kən/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
can /kæn; kən/ || I opened the can of beans with my knife.
careful /ˈkeəfl/ | Be careful when you cross the road.  

carefully /ˈkeəflɪ/ | We carefully walked along the narrow path.  
carrot /ˈkærət/ | Carrots grow under the ground.  
carry /ˈkærɪ/ | Can you carry this bag?  
case /keɪs/ | I want to tell you why I didn’t come to your party, in case you didn’t know.  
cat /kæt/ | The cat ate some bread.  
catch /kætʃ/ | The boy didn’t catch the ball.  
cattle /ˈkætl/ | There are many cattle grazing on the grassland.  
cause /kɔːz/ | What is the cause of your illness?  
certainly /sərˈtɪnlɪ/ | I can certainly speak Tibetan.  
chair /tʃəə/ | This chair is broken.  
chance /tʃæns/ | By chance, I met an old classmate this afternoon when I went to town.  
charge /tʃɑːdʒ/ | What is that hotel’s per night room charge?  
cheap /tʃiːp/ | The cake is cheap.  
cheat /tʃiːt/ | Students should not cheat on their tests.  

May I pay for these items with a check? I will need to check on their progress.

Don’t be sad. Cheer up! The girls cheered on their friends, encouraging them to finish the race.

The atmosphere is full of many different chemicals.

Don’t be sad. Cheer up! The girls cheered on their friends, encouraging them to finish the race.

China has many nationalities.

Most people who live in China speak Chinese.

She will choose a nice dress to wear today.

All my friends want to go to the cinema to see a film.

Let’s circle the holy mountain this summer.

He is a helpful man and a good citizen.

The city is many miles away from here.

Before he was a soldier, now he is a civilian.

From the look on their faces, it seems their ideas clash.

When do we have our Chinese class? What social class do you belong to?

She saw her classmate on the way to school.

Where is our classroom?
clean /kliːn/ 1. The classroom is not clean. 2. Please clean the classroom.
cleanest /kliːnst/ 1. This is the cleanest school I have ever seen.
cleanse /klenz/ 1. It’s a good idea to cleanse a wound with fresh water.
clock /klɒk/ 1. The clock in our classroom is broken.
close /kləuz/ 1. Close the door.
closed /kləʊzd/ I. I closed the window.
cloth /klɒθ/ 1. She sewed the dress from a piece of cloth.
clothes /kləʊdz/ 1. Where are your clothes?
cold /kəʊld/ 1. I don’t like cold winter weather.
coffee /kɒfi/ 1. Coffee without sugar tastes bitter.
colour (color) /ˈkʌlər/ 1. What colour is your coat?
come /kʌm/ 1. Please come here.
come in /kʌm ɪn/ 1. Please come in.
come over /kʌm ˈəʊvər/ 1. I want my friend to come over to my house tonight.
comedy /kəˈmədi/ 1. I like to listen to comedy programmes on the radio.
Colds are a common illness in the winter. Many people work for that electric company. He doesn’t like to compete with his friends. Computers help people do many kinds of work. She showed her concern by coming by for a visit. That truck is in very bad condition. You will need to ask the conductor for a ticket. The war was started by a small conflict. We must congratulate him on his new job. Summer in Ziling is cool, not hot. My father is a cook in a restaurant. She can’t eat the food until it cools off. The handwritten copy of the manuscript was very old.

The electricity company is called 'Electric'.

Summer in Ziling is cool, not hot.

My father is a cook in a restaurant.
Your answer is correct. How long will it take you to correct your students’ homework?

How much do these apples cost?

Where can we buy some cotton clothes?

Could you buy something for me?

Please count the students in the classroom.

China is a very large country.

This building belongs to the county administration.

There are many pear trees growing in the courtyard.

The old well cover needs to be replaced.

Be sure to cover the top of the water bucket.

I learned how to milk a cow when I was a child.

Ten people died in the train crash.

Every living thing is a wonderful creature.

I can’t pay now so can you give me some credit?

He deserves a lot of credit for the success of that project.

That boy got involved in a life of crime.

The criminal went to jail.

She didn’t like being criticised for the way she did her work.

There are many different kinds of crops growing in the field.

The cross is a sacred symbol for Christians.

If everyone crowds into the bus, we will be uncomfortable.

He said some very cruel words to his sister when he was angry.

I love my father because he was never cruel to me.
crush /kraʃ/ || Make sure the potatoes don’t crush the tomatoes in the bag.

cry /kraɪ/ 1 | θατα || Please don’t be sad and cry. 2 θικιπάθεια 2 Her loud cry of fear was heard far away.
culture /kʌltʃə/ || The way people live is different in every culture.
cup /kʌp/ || What colour is this cup?
cure /kjʊər/ 1 | θατα || The doctors were working hard to find a cure for the disease. 2 This medicine will cure your disease.
current /ˈkɜrtʃənt/ 1 | θατα 2 | θατα || That newspaper always reports the current news. 2 He got a severe shock from the strong electrical current.
custom /ˈkʌstəm/ || Drinking butter tea is a Tibetan custom.
cut /kʌt/ || He cut down the tree with an axe.
dad /dæd/ || My dad is thirty four.
dam /dæm/ || They are building a big dam on the river.
damage /dəˈmeɪdʒ/ 1 | θατα 2 | θατα || How much damage did the drought cause to the crops this year? 2 The floods will damage the crops.
dance /dɑːns/ 1 | θατα 2 | θατα || Many young people don’t like traditional dances, instead they prefer modern dances.
danger /dəˈmɛndʒə/ || It looks like there is danger up ahead on the road.
dangerous /dəˈmɛndʒərəs/ || The mountain path is dangerous.
dark /dɑːk/ 1 | θατα 2 | θατα || At night it gets so dark outside. 2 He gave her a dark angry look.
date /dɛt/ 1 | θατα 2 | θατα || What is your birth date? 2 I don’t want my daughter to date that young man.
day /deɪ/ || My daughter is fourteen.
day-time /ˈdeɪtɪm/ || I go to school in the day-time.
dead /ded/ ǁ We saw a dead animal on the side of the road. ǁ We saw a dead animal on the side of the road.
deadf /def/ ǁ After his long illness he became deaf. ǁ After his long illness he became deaf.
dead /di:l/ ǁ I only deal in new goods, not in used goods.
dear /di:ə/ ǁ My dear wife is a teacher. ǁ My dear wife is a teacher.
debate /dɪˈbeɪt/ ǁ The smartest children won the school debate. ǁ The smartest children won the school debate.
decide /dɪˈsaɪd/ ǁ She decided to go to town in the afternoon. ǁ She decided to go to town in the afternoon.
declinel /dɪˈklɪn/ ǁ He declared that the school would open next week. ǁ He declared that the school would open next week.
degree /dɪˈgriː/ ǁ I hope to get a degree from college someday. ǁ I hope to get a degree from college someday.
demand /dɪˈmænd/ ǁ There is a great demand for meat in the market. ǁ There is a great demand for meat in the market.
deny /dɪˈnэri/ ǁ He didn’t want to deny his children an education. ǁ He didn’t want to deny his children an education.
depend /dɪˈpэnd/ ǁ The family depends on their cow for milk. ǁ The family depends on their cow for milk.
desert /dezərt/ ǁ It doesn’t rain much in the desert. ǁ It doesn’t rain much in the desert.
desk /desk/ ǁ Put the book on the desk. ǁ Put the book on the desk.
destroy /dɪˈstэri/ ǁ By mistake he destroyed some important papers. ǁ By mistake he destroyed some important papers.
details /dɪˈteɪls/ ǁ Please give details about the accident. ǁ Please give details about the accident.

December /dɪˈsembər/ ǁ Christmas is in December. ǁ Christmas is in December.
They need to develop plans to build the school.

It is helpful to draw a diagram before building a house.

I will diagram the data so it is easier to understand.

The dialogue in the play was interesting.

Tibetan and English are different languages.

Learning a new language is difficult.

They had to dig a ditch for the water.

We eat dinner at six o’clock every night.

There is a dire need for a hospital in that town.

He gave a very direct answer to my question.

The dispute was about who owned the horse.

My village is a long distance from town.

Many animals died from a disease.

The students will be dismissed from class one hour later.

I won’t dispute what you said because I agree with you.

Because I don’t like him I have chosen to distance myself from him.
distant /ˈdɪstənt/ adj. The town is so distant that we can’t walk to it in one day.

dive /dʌv/ v. The boy didn’t know how to dive into the river.

divide /ˈdɪvəɪd/ v. The dormitory is divided into two sections.

do /dəʊ/ v. Do you like English?

do my homework /dəʊ məˈhɒməˌwɜːk/ v. I do my homework in the evening.

do not /nəʊ/ v. Do not answer the telephone.

do sports /dəʊ spɔːts/ v. I’m too busy studying to do sports this year.

do the shopping /dəʊ ˈʃɒpɪŋ/ v. I will do the shopping today.

do the washing /dəʊ ˈwɒʃɪŋ/ v. When will you do the washing?

doctor /ˈdɒktər/ n. 1. I’m sick so I’ll go see the doctor. 2. I can’t doctor you because I’m not a physician.

document /ˈdɒkʃənt/ n. The document stated that they could open the school next year.

dog /dɒg/ n. The dog was black.

dollar /ˈdɒlər/ n. The mother gave her son a dollar to spend at the store.

don’t /dɔnt/ v. Don’t come home late.

door /dɔːr/ n. Open the door.

doorbell /ˈdɔːrbɛl/ n. Please ring the doorbell.

down /dɔʊn/ adv. I saw my friend walking down the road.

draft /dræft/ 1. v. The draft of your book needs a lot of work. 2. n. Can you draft a report of the project?

draw /drɔː/ v. Did you draw this picture?

dream /driːm/ v. 1. She told me about the dream she had last night. 2. v. I dream about you all the time.

dress /dres/ n. 1. Her new dress was not expensive. 2. v. I like to dress in nice clothing before I go to parties.

drink /drɪŋk/ v. 1. What is your favorite drink? 2. v. He doesn’t like to drink tea.

drive /drɪv/ v. 1. The shepherd drives the sheep to the grassland every morning. 2. v. I like to go for drives in the countryside.

driver /driːvər/ n. Tell the bus driver to stop over there.

drown /drəʊn/ v. If you don’t know how to swim you can drown.
Drugs /drugs/ [drugs] || Doctors use drugs to fight infections.

Dry /dry/ [dry] || 1. These clothes are not dry, they are wet.  
2. Please dry your hair.

Duck /du:k/ [duk] || There were many ducks swimming in the lake.

Dumpling /dʌmplɪŋ/ (boiled stuffed dumpling) || How do you cook dumplings?

During /ˈdjuərɪŋ/ [ˈdjuərɪŋ] || They all work hard during harvest time.

Dust /dʌst/ [dʌst] || 1. There is so much dust on the road.  
2. I'll dust the furniture so you please sweep the floor.

Duty /ˈdjuːti/ [ˈdjuːti] || It was her duty to watch the school children.

Each /iːtʃ/ [iːtʃ] || Each student had to write a paper.

Ear /ɪə/ [ɪə] || 1. She cut her ear when she fell down.  
2. He has a very good ear for music.

Early /ˈeəli/ [ˈeəli] || He gets up early everyday.

Earn /ɜːn/ [ɜːn] || They earn a lot of money for their work.

Earth /ɜːθ/ [ɜːθ] || 1. The earth is round.  
2. He plowed the earth with a wooden plow.

Earthquake /ˈɜːθkwɪək/ [ˈɜːθkwɪək] || The earthquake killed many animals and people.

Ease /iːz/ [iːz] || She danced with a special grace and ease.

Easily /ˈiːzəli/ [ˈiːzəli] || He was able to learn English easily.

East /iːst/ [iːst] || The school is located east of the village centre.

Easy /iːzi/ [iːzi] || It is not easy to learn English.

Eat /iːt/ [iːt] || The family likes to eat together.

Economy /ɪˈkɒnəmi/ [ɪˈkɒnəmi] || The economy has a big influence on the life of the people.

Edge /edʒ/ [edʒ] || Don’t walk so close to the edge of the cliff.

Edible root /ˈedəbl ˈrʌt/ [ˈedəbl ˈrʌt] || Rice, sugar, yak butter, and edible roots cooked together are delicious.

Educate /ɪˈdʒuːkət/ [ɪˈdʒuːkət] || Books are helpful when educating students.
The increase in rain had a positive effect on crop growth.

A lot of effort is required in learning a language.

The chicken laid only one egg last week.

A lot of effort is required in learning a language.

He works eight hours every day.

She graduated from school when she was eighteen years old.

This was the eighth time he tried.

Electricity can help improve living conditions.

Rain, snow, and wind are all elements of weather.

An elephant is a large animal.

She begins to prepare lunch at eleven o’clock.

Hate, greed, and envy are powerful emotions.

The factory employs many people.

The house was empty after they moved away.

Did you read the book all the way to the end?

He will end the meeting in exactly one hour.

The army fought against the enemy.

The boys on the basketball team have a lot of energy.

The police enforce the laws.

The truck had a problem with its engine.

My father is an engineer.
I enjoy learning English. ฉันชอบเรียนภาษาอังกฤษ
An Englishman came to visit our school yesterday. นักเรียนอังกฤษคนหนึ่งมาเยี่ยมเยียนโรงเรียนชั่วคราว
There aren’t any Englishmen in my town. ไม่มีนักเรียนอังกฤษในหมู่บ้านของฉัน
She will enjoy buying a new dress. เธอจะรักการซื้อสตูดงานใหม่
I hope you will enjoy yourself at the party. ฉันหวังว่าคุณจะมีสุขใจในงานปาร์ตี้
He didn’t get enough food to eat. เขาไม่ได้รับอาหารเพียงพอ
They can enter the building through the front door. พวกเขาสามารถเข้าสู่อาคารผ่านประตูหน้า
The people work hard to protect the environment. ประชาชนทำงานหนักเพื่อปกป้องสภาพแวดล้อม
The students all shared the cleaning job equally. นักเรียนทุกคนแบ่งงานทำความสะอาดอย่างเท่าเทียม
We need to repair the telephone equipment. เราต้องซ่อมแซมอุปกรณ์โทรศัพท์
The wife’s escape from her cruel husband’s control is a familiar theme in novels. ความหนีของภักดีจากความควบคุมของสามีผู้ทรําทรมานเป็นเรื่องที่นิยายชื่นชม
The mouse couldn’t escape from the hawk’s claws. ลูกสัตว์ไม่สามารถหนีออกจากมือของแต่งต่าง
I especially like the colour blue. ฉันชอบสีฟ้า
They want to establish a market on that corner. พวกเขาต้องการตั้งตลาดข้างทาง
I don’t even know how to drive a car. เฉยฉันไม่รู้วิธีขับรถ
She often cooks a meal in the evening. เธอมักจะทำอาหารในที่กลางคืน
The Spring Festival (Lunar New Year celebration) is a big event for the whole village. วันตรุษจีนเป็นสิ่งที่สำคัญในหมู่บ้าน
She doesn’t ever want to leave home. เธอไม่อยากจะทิ้งบ้าน
Every day something new happens. ทุกวันจะมีเรื่องเกิดขึ้น
Everyone in the village celebrates Tibetan New Year. ทุกคนในหมู่บ้านฉลองวันตรุษจีน
Everything got wet in the rain. ทุกอย่างเปียกตั้งแต่ฝน
The sheep were scattered everywhere on the grassland. บรรุษฎ์เป็นกลุ่มเล็กๆกระจายอยู่ทั่วทั้งพื้นที่
There was little evidence that he stole the money. ไม่มีหลักฐานให้เห็นว่าเขาจะลักเงิน
There is a big difference between good and evil. ความแตกต่างใหญ่ที่สุดคือดีกับชั่ว
What is your exact age? She got an excellent job at the university.

The doctor wants to examine the patient. Can you give me an example of how to use that word?

Can you exchange this pot for a different one?

She didn’t have any excuse for not doing her homework.

If you are late again the teacher won’t excuse you.

They now have enough money to execute their plan.

After I exercise I feel tired.

The school didn’t exist before 1978.

Next year our country will export more than it imports.
express /ɪkˈspres/  1äżiˈkæʃən/  2æˈdʒɪʃən/  1We decided to take the express bus rather than the slow one.  2My express purpose for visiting you is to see if how you are.
extend /ɪkˈstend/  The visitors chose to extend their time in the countryside.
extra /ɪkˈstrəʊ/  I will buy some extra clothes for the journey.
extra /ɪkˈstrəʊ/  The visitors chose to extend their time in the countryside.
extra /ɪkˈstrəʊ/  The visitors chose to extend their time in the countryside.
extra /ɪkˈstrəʊ/  The visitors chose to extend their time in the countryside.
extra /ɪkˈstrəʊ/  The visitors chose to extend their time in the countryside.
eye exercises /aɪ ɪkˈsɜːrizəlz/  The teacher suggested she do some eye exercises to help improve her eyesight.
face /feɪs/  The young girl has a beautiful face.  She easily gets sunburn because she has a fair complexion.
face /feɪs/  I lost face when I was publicly reprimanded.  The teacher punished the disobedient student by making her face the blackboard for ten minutes.
fact /fækt/  It is important to separate fact from fiction.
factory /ˈfæktəri/  Many people work at the factory.
fail /fæl/  If she doesn’t study hard she will fail in school.
fail /fæl/  One needs to be a good rider to not fall off a horse.
fall /fɔːl/  The leaves on the trees turn colour every fall.
fall /fɔːl/  Snow falls every winter.
fall off /fɔːl əf/  One needs to be a good rider to not fall off a horse.
false /fɔːls/  Please answer if the question is true or false.
family /ˈfæməli/  She has a very large family.
family tree /ˈfæməli/  A picture of the family tree hung on the wall.
famous /'feiməs/ | फेमस/ || Michael Jackson is a famous singer. क्रेजियन्जङ्क्सन एक फेमस सिंगर है।
far /fɑː/ | फार/ || The village is far from here. एस्ट्रेरीच छोटे किल्ले यहाँ दूर है।
farm /fɑːm/ | फार्म/ 1 The farmer grows barley and vegetables on the farm. निक्त निक्क बार्ली और व्यंजन घर में बढ़ा।
farther /fɑːðər/ | फार्थर/ || The market is farther from town than I thought. एन्ट्री महल शहर से दूर था मेरे अनुमान से।
farthest /fɑːdɛst/ | फार्थेस्ट/ || The other side of the county is the farthest he has ever travelled. काउंटी के दूसरे भाग का दूरी सबसे दूर जाना है।
fast /fɑːst/ | फास्ट/ || The young children run fast to catch the bus to town. बच्चे बस में पहुंचने को आगे चलते हैं।
fat /fæt/ | फेट/ || That yak is fat, not thin. यह याक मध्यम नहीं, दबावी है।
father /'feðər/ | फेथर/ || The son was looking for his father at the market. डिट्ल वायर देखने के लिए बादल में खुद के दादा की खोज में था।
favourite (favorite) /'fevərət/ | फेवरॉट/ | फेवरॉट/ || Red is my favourite colour. रेड मेरा आदर्श रंग है।
fear /fɛər/ | फीयर/ 1 My biggest fear during class is that the teacher will ask me a question and I won’t be able to answer correctly. मेरा आनंद वायरों के दौरान तब सबसे बड़ा निक्स कि टीचर बांटेंगे मेरे को क्विज करने का प्रश्न खुद मैं उत्तर दे सकता हूं।
February /februəri/ | फेब्रुवारी/ || March follows February. मार्च फेब्रुव्यारी के बाद आता है।
feed /fɪd/ | फीड/ 1 Is there enough feed for the cattle this winter? इस सर्वे में बच्चे की भीड़ की अनुकूल योग्यता है।
feel /fɪːl/ | फील/ || How do you feel today? आपनी आज कैसे रह रहे हैं?
feel worried | फील वर्ड्डअर्ड || I feel worried before examinations. बादल बादल के बाद वडे पर खोज जाता है।
female /'feməl/ | फेमल/ || "Female" is the opposite of "male." महिला व्यक्ति का समर्पित व्यक्ति।
fertile /fɜːtɪl/ | फ्यूटिल/ || Fertile land is good for growing crops. फर्टिल लैंड बच्चे का निक्त निक्क है।
few /fjuː/ | फ्यू/ || There are few lakes in this area. एंट्री बाइकों के निक्ककों में कई झीलें हैं।
field /fɪld/ | फ्यूल/ || The horses grazed out in the field. चार्ट वायरों ने फील्ड में बढ़ा।
fierce /fɪəs/ | फ्यूस/ || The fierce dogs scared the robbers away. फ्यूस वायरों ने बादल को बादल ने दूर कर दिया।
fifteen /fɪf'tɪn/ | फिफ्टीन/ || Fifteen days ago I went home. फिफ्टीन दिन पहले मैं घर चला।
fifth /fɪfθ/  This is the fifth day of the New Year.  

fifty /ˈfɪfti/  He was sick for fifty days.  

fight /fɑɪt/  1. (fought) They started a fight.  2. He doesn’t want to fight you because you are my friend.  

fill /fɪl/  We should fill that hole in the road.  

film /fɪlm/  1. Do you have any film for your camera?  2. I want to film the traditional dance in my village this summer.  

final /ˈfaɪnəl/  At the end of the year the teacher gives a final exam.  

find /fɪnd/  I can’t find one of my shoes.  

find out ě I don’t want to find out who was here yesterday.  

fine /faɪn/  1. I’m feeling fine today.  2. I didn’t have enough money to pay the fine.  3. Our teacher will fine us if we don’t come to class on time.  

finish /ˈfɪnɪʃ/  Did you ever finish reading that book?  

fire /faɪə/  Quick, bring some water to put out the fire.  

firm /fɜːm/  1. The business firm lost money last year.  2. The firm potatoes are the freshest ones.  

first /fɜːst/  He wanted to be first in line at the store.  

fish /fɪʃ/  1. There are big fish in the lake.  2. I don’t like to fish but my father does.  

five /faɪv/  There are five fingers on each hand.  

fix /fɪks/  Do you know how to fix the radio?  

flag /fleɪɡ/  1. The flag was flapping in the wind.  2. If our car has a mechanical problem while we are travelling we can flag down another car and ask for help.  

flee /fliː/  The people had to flee from the overflowing river.  

float /fləʊt/  Wood floats on water.  

flood /fləʊd/  1. The flood destroyed the crops last season.  2. If the dam breaks the reservoir’s water will flood the countryside.  

floor /flɔːr/  Don’t put the clothes on the floor.  

flow /fləʊ/  1. The river’s flow is less than last year because of this year’s severe drought.  2. The river flows swiftly in the springtime.  

flower /ˈflaʊə/  The poppy is a beautiful flower.  

• 213 •
soon flower. ᧀ.setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

fluid /fluːd/ I 1liːn/ || There is very little fluid in the bottle. ᧀ.setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

fly /flaɪ/ I 1ˈflaɪər/ 2ˈflaɪər/ I 1My mother is so religious that she won’t even kill a fly. ᧀ.setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

fog /fɔɡ/ I 1liːn/ || The truck had to go very slow because of the fog. ᧀ.setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

follow /ˈfɒləʊ/ I 1liːn/ || The calf followed its mother everywhere. ᧀ.setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

food /fuːd/ I 1liːn/ || We go to the market to buy food. ᧀ.setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

fool /fʊl/ I 1liːn/ 2liːn/ || 1The clown acted like a fool. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

foot /fʊt/ I 1liːn/ 2liːn/ || 1The shoes were at the foot of the bed. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

football /ˈfʊtbɔː/ I 1liːn/ || We like to play football with our friends. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

for /fɔː/ I 1liːn/ || We played outside for a few hours. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

force /fɔːs/ I 1liːn/ 2liːn/ || 1The policemen were criticized for using unnecessary force to subdue the criminal. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

former /ˈfɔːmər/ I 1liːn/ 2liːn/ || 1The former chief lived in that house. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

forgive /fəˈɡɪv/ I 1liːn/ || She could forgive him if he said he was sorry. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

form /fɔːm/ I 1liːn/ || 1He wants to form a new academic organisation. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

former /ˈfɔːmər/ I 1liːn/ 2liːn/ || 1The former chief lived in that house. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

forward /ˈfɔːwɜːd/ I 1liːn/ || The car moved forward slowly. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

four /fɔː/ I 1liːn/ || There are four people in the bus. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

fourth /fɔːθ/ I 1liːn/ || On her fourth birthday she was very happy. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

free /friː/ I 1liːn/ 2liːn/ || 1People do not like to be controlled by others, they like to be free. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves

freeze /friːz/ I 1liːn/ || If the apples are left outside they will freeze. ᧀ setBackgroundColor(255,165,0)dehydration from the leaves
French /ˈfrentʃ/ Do you know how to speak French?
fresh /fres/ The milk is fresh from the cow.
Friday /ˈfraɪər/ Friday is the last school day in the week.
fridge (refrigerator, ice-box) /ˈfrɪdʒ/ They were happy with their new fridge.
fried /fraɪd/ Fried mutton makes a good meal.
friend /frend/ I want to bring my friend to the party.
friendly /ˈfrendli/ Those people are so friendly.
frighten /ˈfraɪtn/ Don’t let the fierce dog frighten you.
frisbee (frisby) /friːzbi/ Toss me the frisbee!
from /frəm; frɒm/ I went from Lhasa to Lanzhou last year by bus.
front /frɒnt/ There were many trees in front of the house.
fruit /fruːt/ We went to pick fruit from the trees last week.
fry /fraɪ/ She doesn’t like to fry food.
fuel /ˈfjuːəl/ Be sure to buy some fuel for the car.
full /fʊl/ This bus is too full.
fun /fʌn/ After school we like to have fun.
funeral /ˈfjuːnərəl/ They were all very quiet on the way to the funeral.
furious /ˈfjuəriəs/ His father was furious when he learned his son missed school.
future /ˈfjuːtʃər/ In the future we will have two schools in this village.
gain /ɡeɪn/ The doctor told her to gain weight.
game /ɡeɪm/ They played a new game in the schoolyard.
garden /ˈɡɑːdən/ Shall we plant some flowers in the garden?
gas /ɡæs/ The car stopped running when it ran out of gas.
gate /ɡeɪt/ Be sure to close the gate behind you.
gather /ˈɡɑːðər/ They left early to go gather the sheep.
general /ˈdʒenərəl/ The general idea about going to school is to get an education.

G

gain /ɡeɪn/ The doctor told her to gain weight.
game /ɡeɪm/ They played a new game in the schoolyard.
garden /ˈɡɑːdən/ Shall we plant some flowers in the garden?
gas /ɡæs/ The car stopped running when it ran out of gas.
gate /ɡeɪt/ Be sure to close the gate behind you.
gather /ˈɡɑːðər/ They left early to go gather the sheep.
general /ˈdʒenərəl/ The general idea about going to school is to get an education.

2The general idea about going to school is to get an education.
She patted the horse’s neck gently. She told the child to get down from the roof.

We have to get dressed and go to school.

He had to get ready for the evening party.

Let’s get ready to go to lunch.

Maybe someone will give us some money.

Be sure to give her the message.

He broke the glass window pane by accident.

I would like to have a glass of hot water.

Don’t go there.

We like to go for a walk after lunch.

Do you want to go for supper at that restaurant?

He didn’t want to go home right away.

She was so tired that she didn’t think she could go on working.

I want to go shopping with my mother.

We could go skating if the lake is frozen.

I told my sister to go to bed at eight o’clock.

We have to go to class now.
After lunch we go to the classroom.

If we work hard we will achieve our goals.

He did not know the name of the god in his village’s temple.

There is a lot of gold in Qinghai.

She did a good job on her school paper.

Good idea! Let’s go to the party now.

The Chinese government is a large organisation.

My goodness! That is a very big problem.

I got a grant that will allow me to do research on Tibetan folk songs for one year.

Perhaps he could grant three wishes.

The store opening was a grand event.

My mother loves her granddaughter very much.

My grandfather lives in our house.

My grandma is eighty years old.

Will your grandparents come to visit us?

He was an obedient grandson.

The horses are eating the grass.

Mgolog Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture has much grassland.

The sky has been grey all day.
great /greet/  It’s great to see you again.

Great idea! /greet əˈdraɪ/  Great idea! I wish I had thought of that.

green /ɡriːn/  The trees turn green in the spring.

Grind /grænd/  We use this machine to grind the flour.

ground /ɡraʊnd/  The apples all dropped on the ground.

Group /ɡruːp/  The group of students went out to play.

Guarantee /ɡærənˈtiː/  This letter guarantees that the equipment will be replaced if it breaks.

guard /ɡɑːd/  The guard stood all night outside the building.

guerrilla /ɡəˈrɪlə/  She showed me a picture of a big black guerrilla in the jungle.

Guess /ɡes/  Your guess is correct.

guide /ɡaɪd/  He wants to become a tour guide after he finishes school.

Guilty /ˈɡɪlti/  The court found that he was guilty of a crime.

gun /ɡʌn/  He doesn’t know how to clean a gun.

Half /hɑːf/  Please cut the bread in half.

Half an hour /hɑːɬ ɑnˈhaʊər/  After half an hour I will go home.

Halt /hɔːlt/  "Halt," said the policeman to the thief running away.

Hand /hænd/  If you can’t do it by yourself, please tell me and I’ll give you a hand.
handbag /ˈhændbæg/ || She put her money in her handbag.

hang /hæn/ || We hang out the laundry when the sun is shining.

happen /ˈhæpən/ || We all stood around waiting for something to happen.

happily /ˈhæpɪlɪ/ || The two sisters talked together happily.

happy /ˈhæpi/ || I was happy to see my father coming down the street.

happy birthday /ˈhæpiˈbɜːðɪŋ/ || We all sang "Happy Birthday" at her birthday party.

Happy New Year! || Everyone yelled, "Happy New Year!" when the clock struck midnight.

harbour (harbor) /ˈhɑːbər/ || There were many boats in the harbour.

hard /hɑːrd/ || She worked very hard at her studies. 1Rocks are a hard material. 2They were all hard-working students.

hard-working /ˈhɑːrdwɜːkɪŋ/ || They were all hard-working students.

harm /hɑːm/ || I'll take care of you and make sure that you don’t come to harm.

harvest /ˈhɑːvɪst/ || All the villagers help to harvest the crops.

has /hæz/ || He has two children.

hat /hæt/ || Don’t forget to wear your hat.

hate /hɛt/ || "Hate" is the opposite of "love." 1I hate to see that child cry.

have /hæv/ || Do you have any money?

have a cup of tea /hæv ə kʌp əv tiː/ || Let’s go and have a cup of tea.

have a good time /ˈhæv ə ɡʊd ˈtɪm/ || I think we will have a good time on our journey.

have a look /hæv əˈlʊk/ || We went to have a look at the mountains.

have a rest /hæv ə rɪst/ || They stopped for a while to have a rest.

have a swim /hæv ə swɪm/ || It was so hot that they decided to have a swim.

have breakfast /hævˈbrekfɛst/ || It’s important to have a good breakfast.

have lunch /hævˈlʌntʃ/ || Where shall we have lunch?

have supper /hævˈsʌpər/ || I’d like to have supper soon.
have to / ʰæv tu/ || Do we have to go home now? ʰæv tu ɡo hou nɔ?

he /hi:/ || He didn’t want to go. ʰi: ɗn’t wɑnt tu gɔ.

he’d /hi:d/ || He’d always drink too much at parties. ʰi:d 确诊 tu mɔt tu ɡrənt pɔrtz.

head /hed/ || That horse has a big head. ʰed ʰeɪd

headquarters /ˌhɛdˈkwɔːtəz/ || That brick building is the police headquarters. ʰed ˈkwɔːtəz

health /helθ/ || Eating good food will improve your health. ʰelθ

healthy /helθi/ || Getting enough exercise makes a healthy body. ʰelθi

hear /hɪər/ || Speak louder, I can’t hear you. ʰɪər

heard /hɜːd/ || I never heard what happened to them. ʰɜːd

heart /hɑːrt/ || He has some problem with his heart. ʰɑːrt

heat /hiːt/ || The heat in the summer feels good. ʰiːt

heavy /ˈhevi/ || The load was too heavy for the donkey. ʰˈhevi

hell /hel/ || Some people believe hell is on earth. ʰel

helicopter /ˈhɛlɪkəptər/ || You don’t see many helicopters in Ziling. ʰˈhɛlɪkəptər

hello /həˈloʊ/ || Hello! How are you? ʰəˈloʊ

help /help/ || I appreciate your help. ʰelt

her /hɜːr/ || She didn’t want to give her sister the book. ʰɜːr

here /hɪər/ || You are welcome here. ʰɪər

hero /ˈhɪərəʊ/ || Many boys want to become heroes. ʰɪərəʊ

hers /hɜːz/ || She didn’t know if the book was hers or her brother’s.

herself /hɜːrˈself/ || She wanted to bake the bread all by herself. ʰɜːrˈself

hey /hei/ || Hey! What are you doing over there? ʰei

hi /haɪ/ || Hi! Nice to see you. ʰaɪ

hide /haɪd/ || The child liked to hide behind the trees. ʰaɪd

high /haɪ/ || That mountain is very high. ʰaɪ

highland barley /ˈhaɪland ˈbɔːli/ || Highland barley is a common crop in this area. ʰaɪland ˈbɔːli

hijack /ˈhɪdʒək/ || The airplane hijack attempt occurred when the plane was over the Atlantic Ocean. ʰɪdʒək

hill /hɪl/ || That is only a small hill over there. ʰɪl
Did you give the letter to him? [Did you give the letter to him?]

He went to the festival by himself. [He went to the festival by himself.]

His hat was made out of fox skin. [His hat was made out of fox skin.]

She didn’t know the history of her village. [She didn’t know the history of her village.]

I told him not to hit his brother. [I told him not to hit his brother.]

Hmm, I wonder how much this costs? [Hmm, I wonder how much this costs?]

Would you like to hold the baby for a while? [Would you like to hold the baby for a while?]

The fox jumped into the hole. [The fox jumped into the hole.]

During the winter we have a holiday from school. [During the winter we have a holiday from school.]

We often go to visit the holy mountain. [We often go to visit the holy mountain.]

I told him not to hit his brother. [I told him not to hit his brother.]

Hmm, I wonder how much this costs? [Hmm, I wonder how much this costs?]

Do you think your brother is at home? [Do you think your brother is at home?]

She always likes to go visit her hometown. [She always likes to go visit her hometown.]

The good students do their homework. [The good students do their homework.]

She was an honest girl. [She was an honest girl.]

They wanted to honour their grandparents’ wishes. [They wanted to honour their grandparents’ wishes.]

His biggest hope is that he will be able to graduate from college and then get a good job. [His biggest hope is that he will be able to graduate from college and then get a good job.]

We hope they don’t get caught in the rain. [We hope they don’t get caught in the rain.]

There was a horrible accident on the road. [There was a horrible accident on the road.]

I like to ride my horse. [I like to ride my horse.]

We had to take him to the hospital when he was sick. [We had to take him to the hospital when he was sick.]

The people were hostile to the strangers. [The people were hostile to the strangers.]

Before a war there are usually some smaller hostilities among people. [Before a war there are usually some smaller hostilities among people.]

The soup is too hot to eat. [The soup is too hot to eat.]

They just finished building a new hotel in town. [They just finished building a new hotel in town.]

I will be back in one hour. [I will be back in one hour.]

Would you like to come to our house for dinner? [Would you like to come to our house for dinner?]

My sister doesn’t do much housework. [My sister doesn’t do much housework.]

How long will it take to get there? [How long will it take to get there?]

I don’t know how you did it but I’m glad you did. [I don’t know how you did it but I’m glad you did.]

221
How are you? I’m fine and you?

How many How many brothers do you have?

How much How much money do you have?

How often How often do you go to the market?

How old are you? I’m ten years old.

However I don’t know if it’s possible, however, you can try.

Huge I saw a huge animal on the mountain.

Human The people said the strange creature didn’t look human.

Humour He has an excellent sense of humour.

Hundred We learned how to count to a hundred in English class.

Hunger No one should die from hunger.

Hungry The child was crying because she was hungry.

Hunt During the hunt one hunter accidentally shot another hunter.

Hurry I’m not in a hurry so take your time.

Hurt Be careful. Don’t hurt yourself using that hammer.

Husband She was happy to find a nice husband.

Ice Do you think the water has turned to ice yet?

Idea It would be a good idea if you wore warm clothes.

If If she knew him she would tell me.

Ill My grandmother was very ill last year.

Illegal He didn’t want to do anything illegal.

Imagine Can you imagine what a bird sees?

Immediate Mother said to come home immediately.

Import Our country needs to import certain goods.
important /ɪmˈpɔːrnt/ | Important It is very important to go to school.

improve /ɪmˈpruːv/ | Improve They bought the machines to improve farming methods.

in /ɪn/ | In In two years I will finish school.

in bed /ɪn ˈbed/ | In bed She was so sick that she stayed in bed all day.


in English /ɪn ˈɛŋɡlɪʃ/ | In English Do you know how to write a letter in English?

in front of /ɪn frʌnt əv/ | In front of I waited for him in front of the school.

in line /ɪn lайн/ | In line We had to stand in line at the cinema.

in luck /ɪn lʌk/ | In luck I think we are in luck. Here comes the bus.

in the classroom /ɪn ði ˈkæləsRUм/ | In the classroom The teacher is usually in the classroom.

in the desk /ɪn ði ˈdekz/ | In the desk She likes to keep her pencils in the desk.

in the end /ɪn ði ˈend/ | In the end In the end he agreed it was a good idea.

in the food /ɪn ði ˈfoʊd/ | In the food It is very warm in the kitchen.

in the toilet /ɪn ði ˈtOlt/ | In the toilet He’s in the toilet now.

in Tibetan /ɪn tibˈæŋɡən/ | In Tibetan We can all say that in Tibetan.

in trouble /ɪn ˈtrʌbl/ | In trouble I hope they don’t get in trouble for being late again.

incident /ɪnˈsiːdənt/ | Incident The newspaper reported the incident in great detail.

incite /ɪnˈsaɪt/ | Incite It was said that those boys incited a riot.

include /ɪnˈkluːd/ | Include She wanted to be included in planning the party.

increase /ɪnˈkriːs/ | Increase I’m worried about my recent weight increase.

independent /ɪnˈdɛndənt/ | Independent She is an independent woman.

industry /ˈɪndəstri/ | Industry The tobacco industry makes money from selling cigarettes.

inflation /ɪnˈflɛʃn/ | Inflation Inflation can lower the value of money.

influence /ɪnˈfljuːəns/ | Influence The leaders have a great influence over the country.
inform /ɪnˈfɔːm/ | जानता / जिक्र कर / The radio programme didn’t inform the people about the storm in time. क्रिया निर्देशन संबंधित हुआ था।

injure /ɪndʒər/ | घायल कर / I injured my foot when I fell the other day. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

innocent /ɪnˈɒsnt/ | निर्मम / She looks so innocent in that pretty dress. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

insane /ɪnˈseɪn/ | दर्द / That man screaming over there is insane. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

insect /ɪnˈsekt/ | चिड़िया / I thought I saw an insect under the bed. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

inside /ˈɪnzaɪd/ | आंतरिक / They wanted to keep the puppy inside the house. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

inspect /ɪnˈspekt/ | विचार / The police came to inspect the building. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

instead /ɪnˈsted/ | बदला / Instead of meat he wanted to eat vegetables. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

instrument /ɪnˈstrəmənt/ | बाजार / Do you know how to play a musical instrument?

insult /ɪnˈsʌlt/ | चिकित्सा / 1. His insult made me angry. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था। 2. He didn’t want to insult anyone. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

intelligent /ɪnˈtelɪdʒənt/ | उद्देश्य / The scholar is very intelligent. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

intense /ɪnˈtens/ | घर वाला / The heat in the summertime is intense. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

interest /ɪnˈtræst/ | आश्वासन / 1. What percent interest does the bank pay on one-year deposits? क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था। 2. Do you have any interest in studying English? क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

interesting /ɪnˈtræstɪŋ/ | दर्द / I find travelling to other places is interesting. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

interfere /ɪntəˈfəːr/ | निर्णय / His mother wanted to interfere in their neighbour’s business. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

international /ɪntəˈrəʊʃənəl/ | अंतर्राष्ट्रीय / They waited at the airport for the international flight to arrive. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

intervene /ɪntəˈvɪn/ | निर्णय / The teacher had to intervene in the fight between two boys. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

into /ɪntu/ | लाइट / It was difficult getting into the sleeping bag. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

invade /ɪnˈvɛrd/ | चिनाई / The enemy was going to invade in the morning. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

invent /ɪnˈvent/ | जानता / China invented paper. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

invest /ɪnˈvest/ | निर्णय / If you put your money in the bank they will invest it for you. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

investigate /ɪnˈvestɪɡeɪt/ | निर्णय / The police needed to investigate the crime. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।

invite /ɪnˈvɑːrt/ | चिनाई / I will invite her to my home for dinner. क्रिया संरक्षण संबंधित हुआ था।
involve /ɪnˈvɒlv/  It’s better not to involve too many people in the problem.

iron /aɪrən/  The hammer is made out of iron.

is bad for /ɪz ˈbeɪd fɔː(ə)/  Smoking is bad for you.

is different from /ɪz ˈdɪfrənts frəm/  Frying food is different from baking.

is good at /ɪz ɡʊd ət/  He is good at English.

is good for /ɪz ɡʊd fɔː(r)/  Exercise is good for you.

is out /ɪz əut/  1. School is out for the summer after one month.

January /dʒəʊnɪˈjuːəri/  January is a cold month in this area.

Japanese /dʒəpəni/  Are you learning how to speak Japanese?

jewel /dʒuːəl/  She kept a precious jewel in a box.

job /dʒɒb/  He hopes to get a good job after school.

join /dʒɔɪn/  She will join the army someday.

joint /dʒɔɪnt/  1. The teacher is a very good judge of character.

joke /dʒəʊk/  He always likes to tell a good joke.

judge /dʒʌdʒ/  The teacher is a very good judge of character.

jungle /dʒʌŋɡl/  There is no jungle in Qinghai.

J

June /dʒuːn/  June is a lovely month for looking at flowers.
jury /'dʒʊəri/ | The jury decided that the man was guilty.

just /dʒʌst/ | The bus arrived just in time.

keep /ki:p/ | 1 Keep quiet! Mother is sleeping. 2 How much of the money do you want to keep for yourself?

keep busy | My father always likes to keep busy.

keep healthy | You must eat good food if you want to keep healthy.

keep busy | My father always likes to keep busy.

kind /kaɪnd/ | 1 My teacher is kind. 2 What kind of husband do you want?

kinds of crops | I grow all kinds of crops.

kiss /kɪs/ | Mother is kissing her baby.

kite /kaɪt/ | The kite flew into the sky.

knife /naɪf/ | My knife is long.

know /nəʊ/ | I don’t know English very well.

labour (labor) /'ləbər/ | I labor every day under harsh working conditions.

laboratory /'læbərətri/ | Scientists do their work in a laboratory.

lack /læk/ | For lack of money she had to wear old shoes.

ladder /'lædər/ | I will climb a ladder to reach the roof top.

lake /leɪk/ | Qinghai Lake is very large.

lama /'lɑːmə/ | The lama prays in the temple.

lamb /læm/ | The baby lamb was brought into the tent.

land /lænd/ | 1 How much land does your family have? 2 Our airplane was forced to land in the ocean.
We are learning to speak the English language in school.

large /ˈlaːdʒ/ || She is a large woman.

last /ˈlɑːst/ || I’m always last in line.

last month /ˈlɑːst mʌnθ/ || Last month was my birthday.

last time /ˈlɑːst taɪm/ || The last time I saw you, you were ill.

last week /ˈlɑːst wʊk/ || I saw that movie last week.

last year /ˈlɑːst ˈjɛər/ || Last year I studied French.

late /leɪt/ || Don’t be late for class!

late on /ˈleɪt ɒn/ || Later on let’s go to your home.

laugh /lɑːf/ || When you fell we laughed at you.

laugh at /lɑːf ət/ || When you tell a joke, we laugh with you.

laugh with /lɑːf ˈwið/ || When you tell a joke, we laugh with you.

launched /ˈlɑːntʃt/ || When they are finished building the ship they must launch it.

law /lɔː/ || The court system upholds the law.

lead /liːd/ || I will follow your lead.

leave /liːv/ || Please leave your coats here.

left /liːft/ || I left my home an hour ago.

less /les/ || I have less money than you do.

less than a day /lɛs ˈðeɪ/ || He worked less than a day.

less than a month /lɛs ˈmʌnθ/ || In less than a month I will be thirteen.
less than a week | I will leave school in less than a week.

less than a year | I have studied English for less than a year.

lesson /lesn/ | What lesson will we learn today?

let /let/ | I let my students go home early.

letter /leta/ | The English alphabet has twenty-six letters.

level /levl/ | The topography here is level in some areas and sloping in other areas.

liberal /lɪbərəl/ | She had some liberal ideas about education.

license /ˈlaɪsns/ | My mother has a driver’s license.

lie /laɪ/ | Why did you tell her a lie?

life /laɪf/ | Most people want to have a good life.

lift /lɪft/ | Help me lift this box.

light /laɪt/ | The light in this room is not good.

lightning /ˈlaɪtnɪŋ/ | The lightning pierced the night sky.

like /laɪk/ | I like to study English.

limit /ˈlɪmɪt/ | There is no limit to the number of cups of tea I can drink.

line /laɪn/ | Draw a line on your paper.

link /laɪnk/ | He is the link between the two sides.

liquid /ˈlɪkwɪd/ | The kettle was overflowing with liquid.

list /ˈlɪst/ | Please list your expenses for last year.

listen and repeat | As I read the new words please listen and repeat.

listen /ˈlɪsn/ | Don’t listen to what she says.

listen to | Please carefully listen to your teacher.

little /ˈlɪtl/ | My little brother is now a student.
live /lɪv/ 1. They will do a live performance of music.
2. Where do you live?
load /ləʊd/ 1. The yak is carrying a very heavy load.
local /ləʊkəl/ 1. Those thanggas were drawn by local artists.
lonely /ləʊnəli/ 1. It was lonely walking on the road at night.
long /lɒŋ/ 1. He has very long legs.
look /lʊk/ 1. This product has a new modern look.
2. Please look both ways before you cross the street.
look after 1. When I’m gone, please look after my children.
look around 1. Please look around your bedroom for the book.
look at 1. Please look at your book.
look by 1. Please look by the window for your missing watch.
look for 1. Look for the missing bag in the kitchen.
look the same 1. You look the same as you did ten years ago.
lose /luːz/ 1. The man thought he would lose the bet.
lot /lɒt/ 1. This lot of students is the best I’ve ever taught.
lots of 1. There are lots of students in my school.
loud /laʊd/ 1. The truck engine makes a loud sound.
love /laʊv/ 1. The love I have for my wife is greater than the love I have for myself.
low /ləʊ/ 1. The car is low on fuel.
loyal /ˈloʊəl/ 1. She was a loyal friend.
luck /lʌk/ 1. We didn’t have any luck finding her mother at the market.
lunch /lʌntʃ/ 1. When did you eat lunch?
I’ve never seen a machine like this before.

She’s not sane, she’s mad.

I got so mad at him because he insulted me.

Madam just had her eightieth birthday.

Did you get any letters in the mail today?

She bought some stamps at the main post office.

Is English your major area of study?

The majority of students wanted to have a party at the school.

Do you know how to make bread?

Don’t make faces at your classmates.

How do you make milk tea?

I am a man.

How many oranges do you want?

The map of China looks like a cock.

The soldiers learn how to march in a line.

What is that mark on your arm?

He got a good mark on the test.

The teacher said that she would mark our examinations tomorrow.

What kind of things do they sell in the market?

We can market our greenhouse production in town.

That woman is going to marry my brother.

A great mass of flies gathered on the dead sheep.
material /maˈtrɪərɪəl/ ‖ Wool is strong material for a coat. 裁縫 布料
matter /ˈmætər/ ‖ 1 What’s the matter with you? 肖像 對你來說是什麼問題？ 2 I have a matter to discuss with you in private. 處理 有件事情要和你私下裡談
may /meɪ/ ‖ 1 May I help you? 2 May is in spring. 我 1 師傅 1 你可以幫助我嗎？ 2 五月在春季。
maybe /ˈmeɪbɪ/ ‖ 1 Maybe I will be a nurse. 1 可能 1 我可能做一名護士。
mayor /ˈmeɪər/ ‖ (u ə ə) Who do you think will be appointed mayor of this town? 職務 職位 1 你認為誰能夠被選為這個鎮的鎮長呢？
me /mi:/ ‖ Don’t laugh at me! 1 沒有笑 我！
meal /miːl/ ‖ 1 When can we have a meal together? 2 I am one and a half metres tall. 1 我們什麼時候可以一起進餐？ 2 我有一點五米高。
mean /mi:n/ ‖ 1 What does “apple” mean in Chinese? 2 Don’t be mean to your sister. 1 “蘋果”在中文中有什麼意思？ 2 不要在你妹妹身上使壞。
measure /ˈmeɪʒər/ ‖ Do you have a way to measure the size of this room? 1 具體方法 1 你有什麼方法可以測量這個房間的尺寸嗎？
meat /miːt/ ‖ Is there meat in this dish? 1 肉類食物 1 這個菜裏有肉嗎？
medicine /ˈmedsn/ ‖ Did the doctor give you any medicine for your cold? 1 藥物 1 藥師為你開了感冒藥嗎？
meet /miːt/ ‖ When can we meet? 1 會面 1 我們什麼時候可以見面呢？
meeting /ˈmiːtn/ ‖ Where shall we have our meeting? 1 會面 1 我們在哪裡可以進行會面呢？
melt /melt/ ‖ The weather is so warm, perhaps the ice on the lake will melt. 1 溶化 1 天氣如此暖和，也許湖面上的冰會融化。
member /ˈmembər/ ‖ Are you a member of the basketball team? 1 多元 1 你是籃球隊的一員嗎？
memorial /ˌmɛməˈriəl/ ‖ They built a large memorial to remember those who died in the war. 1 記念 1 他們修建了一個大型紀念碑來紀念在戰爭中犧牲的人。
memory /ˈmeməri/ ‖ That student has such a good memory for numbers. 1 窮 INITIAL 1 這名學生對數字記憶力非常好。
men | (ə ə) The men take a bath in this room. 1 男性 1 這些男性正在這個房間裡洗澡。
mend /mɛnd/ ‖ Please mend my socks. 1 維修 1 請幫我修理我的襪子。
mercenary /məˈsænəri/ ‖ His motives for working were purely mercenary. 1 萊斯 1 他工作的動機只是為了金錢。
mercy /ˈmɜːsi/ ‖ The fox had no mercy for the chicken. 1 懂的 1 狐狸對於雞毫無殘忍。
message /ˈmesɪdʒ/ ‖ Did you want to leave a message? 1 信息 1 你想要留言嗎？
metal /ˈmeɪtl/ ‖ The bridge is made out of strong metal. 1 金屬 1 那座橋是由強大的金屬建造的。
method /ˈmeθəd/ ‖ What is the best method for teaching English? 1 方法 1 課堂教授英語的最佳方法是什麼？
metre (meter) /ˈmiːtər/ ‖ I am one and a half metres tall. 1 身高 1 我有一點五米高。
microscope /ˈmaɪskrəʊskəʊp/ n. A microscope helps the eye see very small objects like bacteria.

middle school /ˈmaɪdl skɔːl/ n. The nearest middle school is in the county town.

middle /ˈmaɪdl/ n. The boy sitting in the middle of the picture is my brother.

militant /ˈmaɪlɪtənt/ n. The general’s speech was full of militant ideas.

military /ˈmaɪlɪtri/ n. The military life is full of hardship.

milk /mɪlk/ 1 n. Yak milk is rich. 2 After my mother milks the yaks she collects dung.

mind /maɪnd/ 1 n. Our teacher has a very open mind. 2 Do you mind if I smoke?

mine /maɪn/ 1 n. This book is mine. 2 There is no gold mine in this country.

mineral /ˈmaɪnərəl/ n. There are many types of minerals in Qinghai.

minister /ˈmaɪnɪstaʊ/ n. The Minister of the Education Department is a very busy person.

minor /ˈmaɪnər/ 1 n. I’m not concerned with minor problems. 2 Until you are an adult you are a minor.

minority /ˈmaɪnərəti/ n. Tibetans are one of China’s minority populations.

minute /ˈmaɪnɪt/ n. I will come to your room in a minute.

miss /mɪs/ 1 n. I’m going to miss school when it is over.

Miss /mɪs/ n. Miss Li teaches us French.

missile /ˈmaɪsəl/ n. They launched a missile that will go to the moon.

missing /ˈmaɪsɪŋ/ 1 n. Her brother was missing from school yesterday.

mistake /ˈmaɪstek/ n. I made a mistake.

mix /mɪks/ n. Milk mixed with tea is a common Tibetan drink.

mmm n. Mmm, this tastes good.

mob /mɒb/ n. A loud and angry mob of people raided the store.
This area has a moderate climate during the summer.

I’ve been asked to moderate the discussion.

I like to read books about modern times.

My mom worked late last night.

I'll leave in a moment.

I start work on Monday.

I don’t have much money.

We didn’t have time to climb to the top of the mountain.

We all mourned the passing of our grandmother.

Now that the period of mourning has passed for our deceased father, we can attend parties.

The move to my new apartment required one week.

Please move over so I can sit down.

I didn’t like the movie.

Mr. Jones came to your classroom yesterday.

Mrs. Sgrol ma teaches us Tibetan.

Ms. Smith is our English teacher.

I don’t have much knowledge of the history of Portugal.

How much does this cost?

My mum is a bus driver.

There has never been a murder in this town.
music /mju:zik/  I love to listen to music on the radio. डर्तू खुशी के लिए सुगंध नाटकों का वादा रूपात हुआ।
mustn’t /məstnt/  You mustn’t leave your home alone.  शिक्षा नाम का अनुभव अतिरिक्त निष्ठा।
must /məst; məst/  I must see you this evening.  बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
mustn’t /məstnt/  You mustn’t tell him about the problem at school.  बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
mutton /ˈmʌtn/  Mutton is now very cheap.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
my /maɪ/  This is my book.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
myself /ˈmɑːself/  I hurt myself with the knife.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
mystery /ˈmɪstri/  It is a mystery how the books were stolen.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
naked /ˈneɪkt/  The baby slept naked in his mother’s arms.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
name /nɛm/  1 What is your name? 2 Can you name all of China’s provinces, autonomous regions, and special economic zones?  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
nation /ˈnetʃn/  China is a very large nation.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
nature /ˈneɪtʃər/  1 She has a kind nature.  2 Trees are a beautiful part of nature.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
navy /ˈneɪvɪ/  The British used to have the largest navy in the world.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
near /nɪər/  Please sit near the fire.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
nearly /ˈnɛrili/  I learned nearly all the new words.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
necessary /ˈnesəsəri/  Do you feel it is necessary to talk like that?  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
need /niːd/  I don’t need any help.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
need never  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
negotiate /nɪˈɡoʊəˌdʒiːt/  The businessmen negotiated a good price for the land.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
neither /ˈnɪðər; ˈniːðər/  She has neither money nor food.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
nerve /nɜːv/  1 When he cut his foot he injured a nerve.  2 It took a lot of nerve for him to question the leader’s motives at the public meeting.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
natural /ˈnɔːtrəl/  He said he felt neutral about the situation.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
never /ˈnevr/  I never saw that movie.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
new /nuː/  My coat is new.  नन्हा बुद्धि अंतर में पीला नजर दिखाया।
New Year | What will you do during the New Year holiday? Did you hear the news about China today? The next day he again did not go to school. Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay. Next year I will be fourteen.

news | Did you hear the news about China today? Next year I will be fourteen.

next day | The next day he again did not go to school.

next time | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next to | Who sits next to you?

next / next day | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next time | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next year | Next year I will be fourteen.

next / next day | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next time | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next year | Next year I will be fourteen.

news | Did you hear the news about China today?

next / next day | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next time | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next year | Next year I will be fourteen.

next / next day | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next time | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next year | Next year I will be fourteen.

news | Did you hear the news about China today?

next / next day | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next time | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next year | Next year I will be fourteen.

news | Did you hear the news about China today?

next / next day | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next time | Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.

next year | Next year I will be fourteen.

news | Did you hear the news about China today?
Please take a note to my friend. I couldn’t read the notes on the sheet music.

I understood nothing he said.

It begins to get much colder in November.

The poor man had nowhere to sleep that night.

Nuclear weapons are extremely dangerous.

A ball is a round object.

She only likes to observe basketball games.

He knows how to occupy his time well.

It takes many days to drive to the ocean from here.

How many days are in October?

She is the best of all the students.

The light is off.

I tried to offer him my coat because he was cold.

My office is here.

Is your father an officer in the army?

Did the official say that it was OK?

I often speak English.

Oh dear! I can’t believe it is true!

Oh, is it really true?

We need more cooking oil.

OK, we will do what you suggest.

My grandmother is very old.

My father was on duty last night at the hospital.
on foot | On the way home | on /on/ | on the way home | once /wʌns/ | one /wʌn/ | only /əʊnli/ | open /əʊpən/ | operation /ˌɒpərəʃən/ | opinion /əˈpɪmən/ | oppose /əˈpɔʊz/ | opposite /əˈpɒzət/ | oppress /əˈprɛs/ | or /ɔː/ | orange /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ | orbit /ˈɔːrɪt/ | orchestra /ˌɔrkiˈstrə/ | order /ˈɔrdaɪ/ | organise (organize) /ˈɔɡənaɪz/ | on foot | I went on foot to the shop. | on /on/ | The book is on the desk. | on the way home | once /wʌns/ | one /wʌn/ | only /əʊnli/ | open /əʊpən/ | operation /ˌɒpərəʃən/ | opinion /əˈpɪmən/ | oppose /əˈpɔʊz/ | opposite /əˈpɒzət/ | oppress /əˈprɛs/ | or /ɔː/ | orange /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ | orbit /ˈɔːrɪt/ | orchestra /ˌɔrkiˈstrə/ | order /ˈɔrdaɪ/ | organise (organize) /ˈɔɡənaɪz/ | I went on foot to the shop. | The book is on the desk. | I once was very sick. | I only want this book. | After a policy of economic reforms was implemented the country became more open. | Our financial operations require several accountants. | In his opinion everyone should get a good education. | Sometimes stronger animals like to oppress weaker ones. | Do you want coffee or tea? | Her orange jacket was easy to see from far away. | The earth’s orbit around the sun has been carefully studied. | Ten musicians were in the orchestra. | Please order your books and other belongings so that your room looks neat. | I must obey my leader’s order. | I can’t organise my thoughts. |
other /ˈʌðə/ | adjective || Do you want the other one? अन्य वस्त्राची तुम्ही चाहते?
our /aʊr/ | adjective || This is our home. हमचे घर हा आहे.
ours /aʊz/ | adjective || This basketball is ours. ही फुटबॉलच्या बॅल हम्या आहे.
ourselves /ˈɔːsliːvz/ | reflexive || We cleaned the room by ourselves. हम्या रूमच्या स्नेहाच्या तरी हम्या खुप्पतील.
out /aʊt/ | preposition || He threw the paper out the window. तो तिच्या पेपरच्या पेपरेंपासून नमूद केला.
out of | preposition || I walked out of the classroom. म्हणून माझा रूमातून मला निकालला.
outside /ˈaʊtˌsайд/ | preposition || Outside it was colder than inside. बाहेरला त्यासोबत कसोबत तिथे ठिणून माला आला.
over /ˈəʊvər/ | preposition || Class is not over yet. क्रीडा नसलेला नाही.
owe /əʊ/ | verb || How much money does he owe you for those potatoes? तुम्ही त्यांच्या आंबूनसोबत म्हणजेच काय माणूस म्हणजेच काय आंबूला?
own /əʊn/ | adjective || This is my own home that my father left me when he died. या घराला माझी माता दिलासाठी माझे पिता मला वाचला त्याच्या दिवशी.
ourselves /ˈɔːsliːvz/ | reflexive || We cleaned the room by ourselves. हम्या रूमच्या स्नेहाच्या तरी हम्या खुप्पतील.
outside /ˈaʊtˌsайд/ | preposition || Outside it was colder than inside. बाहेरला त्यासोबत कसोबत तिथे ठिणून माला आला.
own /əʊn/ | adjective || This is my own home that my father left me when he died. या घराला माझी माता दिलासाठी माझे पिता मला वाचला त्याच्या दिवशी.
owe /əʊ/ | verb || How much money does he owe you for those potatoes? तुम्ही त्यांच्या आंबूनसोबत म्हणजेच काय माणूस म्हणजेच काय आंबूला?
page /peɪdʒ/ | noun || Turn to page ten. दशम पेपरमध्ये काळवा.
pain /peɪn/ | noun || The doctor tried to stop the pain. योग्यक्तीशी ट्राई, मला नाही त्याची सुधारणा.
paint /peɪnt/ | verb || Every year we paint the outside of our house. हर्षित वर्षातही हम्या घराची बाहीरी सजावला.
pair /peə/ | noun || I bought this pair of shoes last month. होय अंततः मला या पायरच्या जूत्यांना खरेदी केल्या.
palace /ˈpeɪls/ | noun || The king and queen lived in a beautiful palace.
pamphlet /ˈpæmflət/ | noun || Have you seen a pamphlet describing the new school?
pan /pæn/ | noun || We need a big pan to cook all the meat. तुम्ही आश्वस्त ठक्का आहे?
panda /ˈpændə/ | noun || That panda is black and white. या पंडाचा तुम्ही त्यांच्या रंगाच्या रंगाच्या भांडणाऱ्या?
paper /ˈpeɪpər/ | noun || I don’t have any paper. मला कागद नसल्याचा?
parade /ˈpærəd/ | noun || On May first we always have a parade.

•238•
parent /ˈpeərənt/ | /ˈpeərənt/ After my father died I only had one parent.  
parents /ˈpeərənts/ | /ˈpeərənts/ My parents are both teachers.  
parents-in-law | /ˈpeərənts-/ˈleɪ/ My parents-in-law live in Rebgong.  
park /pa:k/ | /ˈpark/ I went to People’s Park last Sunday.  
parliament /ˈpa:lmənt/ | /ˈpa:lmənt/ Britain uses a parliamentary system of government.  
part /pɑ:t/ | /pɑ:t/ Which part of this bread do you want?  
partly /ˈpɑːtli/ | /ˈpɑːtli/ She recognised that the accident was partly her fault.  
party /ˈpɑːti/ | /ˈpɑːti/ We will have a party in our classroom this afternoon.  
pass /pɑ:s/ | /ˈpɑːs/ That mountain pass was an important military location many years ago.  
passage /ˈpæzidʒ/ | /ˈpæzidʒ/ It was a long passage by ship to America from England.  
passenger /ˈpæsmdʒə/ | /ˈpæsmdʒə/ The passenger gave the ticket to the conductor.  
passport /ˈpæspɔ:t/ | /ˈpæspɔ:t/ He thought he had lost his passport.  
past /pɑ:st/ | /pɑ:st/ In the past I did not study English.  
pay /peɪ/ | /peɪ/ I didn’t have to pay much money for these shoes.  
pea /piː/ | /piː/ A small green pea fell off her plate onto the floor.  
peace /piːs/ | /piːs/ There was not much peace to be found in the middle of town.  
pear /piːər/ | /piːər/ The yellow pear fell on the floor.  
peas /piːz/ | /piːz/ Many children don’t like to eat peas.  
pencil /ˈpensl/ | /ˈpensl/ Please sharpen my pencil.  
pencil-box | /ˈpensl-/ˈbɒks/ I bought this pencil-box in that shop.  
penfriend /ˈpenfrend/ | /ˈpenfrend/ I have a penfriend in New Zealand.  
people /ˈpiːpl/ | /ˈpiːpl/ I like to be with other people.  
percent /ˈpɜːsent/ | /ˈpɜːsent/ What percent of students graduate from this school?
That is a perfect answer to that question.
Over time I hope to perfect my singing style.
Perhaps it would be better if I didn’t come tomorrow.
Perhaps I didn’t come tomorrow.
Always put a period at the end of a sentence.
Perhaps it would be better if I didn’t come tomorrow.
Always put a period at the end of a sentence.
They decided to make a permanent change in the school rules.
Please permit me to miss class tomorrow because I need to go to the hospital to see my sick father.
What person would want to go out in a storm like this?
Please phone me.
Does your family have a phone?
This photo was taken in Ziling.
Physics is the study of the laws of motion.
She played the piano beautifully.
I used a pick to dig through the stony earth.
We went to the mountain for a picnic.
This picture was painted one hundred years ago.
Whenever I feel nervous and upset I try to picture a quiet forest scene.
I want a small piece of cake.
After asking many questions we were able to piece together what had happened.
The pilot flies the aeroplane.
The pilot flies the aeroplane.
My brother plays ping-pong very well.
The American pioneers were constantly moving west.
pipe /paːp/ We buried a pipe so that the town could have fresh water.

pirate /ˈpaɪrət/ I once read a story about a pirate and a ship.

place /plɛs/ This is a nice place to live.

place of interest /pɛləs ʌv іntrəst/ Beijing is a place of interest to all Chinese.

plan /pleɪn/ What is the plan for the party next week? Let’s now plan our party for this weekend.

plane /pleɪn/ The plane landed with a bump.

planet /ˈplænt/ Each planet has its own orbit.

plant /plænt/ Some people like to grow plants in their houses.

plate /pleɪt/ I broke a plate when I was washing dishes.

play /pleɪ/ I like to play with my baby brother.

player /ˈpleɪər/ He is a good volleyball player.

please /pliːz/ It will please my mother if I study well.

pleased /ˈpliːzd/ I was pleased with your good study.

pleasure /ˈplɪzər/ What gives you the most pleasure?

plenty /ˈplenəti/ There is plenty of meat here for everyone to eat.

plot /plɔt/ Can you describe the plot of the film to me?

pocket /ˈpɒkɪt/ My pocket has a hole in it.

poem /ˈpɜːm/ My teacher taught us how to write poems in class.

point /pɔɪnt/ A needle has a very sharp point.
Poison /ˈpɔɪzn/ 1. Poison is used to kill weeds and animals.
2. The attempt to poison the enemy leader was successful.

Police /pəˈliːs/ 1. I called the police. 2. It is my turn to police the campus this evening.

Police station /pəˈliːsnɛtʃən/ 1. The police station is near a large intersection.

Policeman /pəˈliːsmən/ 1. The policeman stopped that red car.

Policy /ˈpɒləsɪ/ 1. What is the school policy on being late?

Politics /ˈpɒlətɪks/ 1. You can read about politics in the newspaper.

Pollute /pəˈluːt/ 1. Don’t pollute the river with your garbage.
2. Some cities in the world are very polluted.

Poor /pɔːr/ 1. Poor people want to become rich.

Popular /ˈpɒpjʊlər/ 1. Popular music can be heard everywhere in the city.

Population /ˈpɒpjʊleɪʃn/ 1. China has the largest human population of any country in the world.

Pork /pɔrk/ 1. I like pork dumplings.

Port /pɔːt/ 1. New York City is a busy port on the east coast of America.

Position /pəˈzɪʃn/ 1. He doesn’t like to sit in one position for a long time.
2. He tried to position himself in the financial market so that he could make as much money as possible.

Possess /pəˈzes/ 1. She wants to possess many nice dresses.

Possible /ˈpɒsəb(ə)l/ 1. Will it be possible for you to visit me in the future?
2. I will post your letter this afternoon.

Post /ˈpɔʊst/ 1. The wooden post was leaned against a tree.

Post office /ˈpɔʊstəfɪs/ 1. I walked to the post office yesterday.

Postcard /ˈpɔʊstkɑːd/ 1. I bought a postcard a few minutes ago.

Postpone /ˈpəʊspəʊn/ 1. The storm caused us to postpone the picnic.
potato /ˈpətətəʊ/  My family likes to eat potatoes.
pour /pɔːr/  Please pour me some tea.
power /ˈpaʊər/  Lifting weights increases muscle power.
practice /ˈpræktɪs/  I practice speaking English everyday.
pour /pɔːr/  Football practice is this afternoon.
power /ˈpaʊər/  Lifting weights increases muscle power.
practice /ˈpræktɪs/  Football practice is this afternoon.

praise /preɪz/  I have only praise for my mother.
praise /preɪz/  She will praise the leader if she meets him.

pray /preɪ/  The monks pray in the temple daily.
prefecture /ˈprɪfɪktʃər/  My home is in Malho Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture.

pregnant /ˈprɛɡnənt/  My sister is pregnant with her first baby.

prepare /prɪˈpeə/  We must prepare a meal for the workers.

present /ˈpreznt/  Don’t buy me a present for my birthday.
present /ˈpreznt/  Who is not present in our class today? Because you are a new teacher, I will present you to the students at this morning’s school meeting.

president /ˈprezɪdənt/  Do you know the name of the President of the United States?

press /preʃ/  The dry cleaners will press your shirt for you.

pressure /ˈpreʃər/  The tires will be flat if they don’t have enough air pressure in them.

prevent /prɪˈvent/  Keeping warm is a good way to prevent a cold.

price /prɑːs/  What is the price of that bread? I will price new computers this afternoon and then decide if I can afford one.

prison /ˈprɪzn/  The guards stood outside the prison gate.

private /ˈprɪvət/  My brother wants to start his own private business.

prize /ˈprɛɪz/  If we study hard we may get a prize for knowing the most words.
probably /ˈprɒbəbli/ I will probably buy a new shirt next year.

problem /ˈprɒbləm/ Learning English without a book is a problem.

produce /ˈprədjʊs/ Did you see a lot of fresh produce at the market?

professor /ˈprəfsər/ I want to be a history professor after I graduate from school.

programme (program) /ˈprɔəɡræm/ I heard there is a good television programme on tonight.

progress /ˈprəʊgres/ The teacher was pleased with the students’ progress.

project /ˈprɔdʒekt/ The town leader asked if the people were interested in the road building project. Can you project what this city may look like ten years from now?

promise /ˈprɔmɪs/ You broke your promise so I don’t believe you any more.

propose /ˈprəʊpəz/ The governor proposed to build four new schools next year.

protest /ˈprəʊtɛst/ No one wanted to protest against the teacher’s ideas.

proud /praʊd/ The parents were very proud when their daughter graduated from school.

prove /pru:v/ Can you prove he took the money?

provide /prəˈvɛrd/ The father wanted to provide the best opportunities for his children.

public /ˈpʌblɪk/ Finally, after many years, they made the secret documents available to the public.
Is your novel ready for publication?

She hopes to get a book of her poems published next year.

I don’t have much pull with the leaders any more.

The water pump is broken so the car won’t work.

The basement classroom is flooded so we will have to pump out the water before we can have class.

The teacher knew she had to punish the naughty young boy.

I would like to purchase a new car someday.

The butter tasted so fresh and pure.

Learning is a life-long purpose.

I’m grateful for the push my teacher gave me many years ago.

Please put away your books and papers.

Put on your cap now.

I could not solve the puzzle after several hours of trying.

This problem will puzzle you.

Qinghai Province is in Northwest China.

A quarter of my study time I spend learning Chinese.

I will question him tomorrow.

Don’t jump the queue.

We walked quickly to the classroom.

I like to listen to quiet music.

He is quite quiet in the evenings.
Let's go to the horse race at the festival.

Radiation from the sun can be harmful.

I don’t own a radio.

The railroad runs past our house.

When will the rain stop?

It was raining all this morning.

The people in that village raise a lot of chickens.

My older brother and his wife raised me.

I asked the students to raise their hands if they knew the answer to the question.

The water in the river rose rapidly after the storm.

The doctor didn’t know how to cure the rare disease.

The rate of growth for the town was steady after they finished the new road.

I can’t reach it.

The mother didn’t react to the news about the accident at first.

Please read this text.

Are you ready to go?

He is a real person.

Do you think his wanting to become president is realistic?

Do you really want to come with me?

What are your reasons for studying English?

It is not reasonable for me to buy a new car at this time.

He has always been a rebel against every established and accepted idea.

The younger students were rebelling against the teachers’ authority.

Did you receive any mail today?
recent /ri:'snt/ \(\text{recent} \) The recent developments caused a delay in plans.

recession /'riː'sɛʃn/ \(\text{recession} \) A failing economy is called a recession.

recognize (recognise) /'rekəˌnai/ \(\text{recognise} \) I didn’t recognise her after she got her hair cut.

record /'rekərd/ \(\text{record} \) 1. The temperature today is a record high.

red /red/ \(\text{red} \) Blood is red.

reduce /ru'djuːs/ \(\text{reduce} \) The traffic light helps reduce accidents on that corner.

refugee /'refjuːdʒi/ \(\text{refugee} \) There are many refugees from war in the world.

refusal /'refjuːzəl/ \(\text{refusal} \) In the summer heat the pile of refuse began to stink.

regret /'rɪɡrɛt/ \(\text{regret} \) I don’t regret studying hard for the exam.

relations /'reləʃənz/ \(\text{relations} \) It’s important to maintain good relations between countries.

release /'reləs/ \(\text{release} \) They decided to release a new model car.

religion /'relɪdʒən/ \(\text{religion} \) Religion is practised by monks and lamas in the temple.

remain /'remən/ \(\text{remain} \) Do you want to remain in this village for more than one year?

remember /'rɛməber/ \(\text{remember} \) Do you remember what you said yesterday?
The workers had to remove the broken glass from the window.

Where is a shop that does electronic appliance repair?

He made a very good report on his study.

Some people like to repress others’ ideas.

What was the result of the argument?

That kind of talk could start a revolt.

Rice is an important food for Chinese people.
I like to ride horses.

My mother likes her wedding ring very much.

The crowd became so angry I thought they would start a riot.

The bell will ring at noon.

The workers will riot if the factory leaders don’t meet with them.

The sun rises every morning in the east.

The Mekong River begins in Yulshul Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture.

The road to the airport is very rough.

He didn’t have enough rope to tie up all the yaks.

His hands were rough from years of hard work outside.

I’m tired so can you row the boat for a while?

The rubber on that old tire is very thin.

Standing in the cold weather without a good jacket can ruin your health.

The castle ruin is situated near a mountain pass.

What are the rules of the school?

Don’t run, walk.
sad /sæd/ | Don’t be sad, be glad. .ViewHolder
safe /sef/ | We are safe here.  ViewHolder
sail /sɛl/ | The boat’s sail is made of strong white cloth.
salt /sɔlt/ | I don’t like salt in my milk tea.
same /sɛm/ | "Big" and "large" have the same meaning.  ViewHolder
satellite /sætələt/ | There are many satellites in the sky orbiting the earth.
satisfy /sætɪfaɪ/ | Even that delicious meal didn’t satisfy him.  ViewHolder
Saturday /sætədʒ/ | I will wash my clothes this Saturday.  ViewHolder
say /seɪ/ | What did you say?
school /skuːl/ | I walk to school every morning.  ViewHolder
science /særəns/ | Science helps us understand the weather.  ViewHolder
score /skɔːr/ | What was your score on the examination?  ViewHolder
scream /skriːm/ | Don’t scream. I can hear you.
sea /siː/ | The lake seemed as large as a sea.  ViewHolder
search /sɜːtfɜː/ | We spent hours searching for the lost boy in the forest.
season /ˈsiːzn/ | Which season of the year is your favourite?
seat /siːt/ | Would you please give your seat to the old person on the bus?
second /ˈsekənd/ | I’m the second oldest child in my family.
secret /ˈsɪkɪrət/ | I’ll tell you because it’s not a secret.
security /sɪˈkjʊərəti/ | For security purposes I’m going to lock the door.
see /siː/ | I can’t see the blackboard.  ViewHolder
seek /siːk/ | She went out to seek a way to earn a living.  ViewHolder
seem /siːm/ | He doesn’t seem to want to go to school today.  ViewHolder
seize /siːz/ | He thought it best to seize the opportunity to get a job.
self /siːl/ | Psychology is the study of the self and others.  ViewHolder
sell /sel/ |  Do you want to sell that sheep?  |
send /send/ |  Was it you who sent me the flowers?  |
sense /sens/ |  That film doesn’t make any sense to me.  |
sentence /sentəns/ |  This sentence is not correct.  |
separate /seprət/ |  They decided to live separately from each other.  |
September /sep'temba/ |  September follows August.  |
send /send/ |  Was it you who sent me the flowers?  |
series /səri:z/ |  Did you watch the soccer series on TV last year?  |
sermon /sɛmən/ |  The minister gave a sermon every Sunday in church.  |
settle /setl/ |  Will you please help settle this argument?  |
seven /sevn/ |  Seven people came to visit us.  |
several /sevrəl/ |  I will be gone for several days.  |
severe /sevrəl/ |  The snowstorm was very severe in Chabmdo last winter.  |
sex /sɛks/ |  1. My sex is female.  2. She wanted to have sex with him but he didn’t want to have sex with her.  |
shape /ʃeɪp/ |  The tip of a needle is very sharp.  |
serve /sɜ:v/ |  The daughters were happy to serve their mother tea.  |
settle /setl/ |  Will you please help settle this argument?  |
September /sep'temba/ |  September follows August.  |
serious /səriər/ |  He was the most serious student in the class.  |
series /səri:z/ |  Did you watch the soccer series on TV last year?  |
serve /sɜ:v/ |  The daughters were happy to serve their mother tea.  |
settle /setl/ |  Will you please help settle this argument?  |
September /sep'temba/ |  September follows August.  |
serious /səriər/ |  He was the most serious student in the class.  |
series /səri:z/ |  Did you watch the soccer series on TV last year?  |
serve /sɜ:v/ |  The daughters were happy to serve their mother tea.  |
settle /setl/ |  Will you please help settle this argument?  |
September /sep'temba/ |  September follows August.  |
The shop is closed.

I like to shop for new clothes in spring.

Let’s go shopping.

My brother is short.

Don’t shout, I can hear you. Her shout was not very loud.

Let’s go shopping.

My brother is short.

Don’t shout, I can hear you. Her shout was not very loud.

Please show me your stamp collection.

What time does the show start?

Sometimes clothes shrink after they are washed.

She looks so pretty with all her silver necklaces.

"Tall" and "long" have similar meanings.

I can understand simple English.

I haven’t seen her since last year.

Please sing this song.

Sir, I do know the answer.

My sister is seven years old.

Please sit down.

Please sit on that chair.

They have improved their living situation.

I have six pencils.
What size are your shoes?

I learned how to skate last winter.

I practiced a lot.

If you want to become a doctor, you must study a skeleton.

I practiced for a long time.

I fell down and cracked open my skull.

I am very tired.

Without freedom of choice one becomes a slave.

I didn’t get enough sleep last night. It’s late so let’s sleep.

Without the ability to breathe, we die.

Don’t be slow to answer my questions.

She was so angry that she smashed the pot.

I don’t like that smell.

They greeted her with big smiles.

Her hair is black, long, and smooth.

I like the smell of dung smoke early in the morning.

The snow was white and beautiful.

He left so we also left.

All the people were very social at the party.

This sock is blue.

The baby’s cheeks are so soft.

My brother is a soldier.
solid /ˈsɒlɪd/  || When it gets cold outside water turns into solid ice.
solve /sɔlv/  || Do you think we will be able to solve the problem?
some /sʌm/  || Do you want some paper?
somebody /ˈsʌmbədi/  || Does somebody here speak English?
something /ˈsʌmtʃɪŋ/  || I heard something about that recently.
sometimes /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/  || Sometimes I listen to music.
space /speɪs/  || Many people are interested in space travel.
speak /spik/  || Don’t speak so loudly.
special /ˈspɪəl/  || We all think she is a special student.
speed /spid/  || The aeroplane flies at a fast speed.
spell /spel/  || Can you spell this word?
spend /spend/  || How much money do you spend every month on food?
spirit /ˈspɪrɪt/  || The happy children are in high spirits.
split /spilt/  || They split the money they won in the contest.
sport /spɔːt/  || What is your favourite sport?
spring /sprɪŋ/  || ¹The metal spring was made of strong steel.
²The metal spring was made of strong steel. ³We get our water from a spring at the bottom of the mountain.
spy /spiː/  || The villagers thought the strange man was a spy.
stamp /stæmp/  || I won’t stamp your document with an official seal until our leader signs it.
I don’t agree with your stand on that question.

The students need to stand when they answer a question.

There are many stars in the night sky.

She was a famous movie star when she was younger.

I’m going to star in a new movie.

He wanted to get off to a good start in his new job.

Let’s start our class now.

There’s no food people starve.

The army will station one hundred soldiers at the new military outpost.

It was late and she still hadn’t returned home.

His stomach was full after eating a big dinner.

The statue is made of stone.

The kettle of tea is on the stove.

Can you draw a straight line?

Tell me a ghost story.

The kettle of tea is on the stove.
strike /straɪk/ The workers’ strike lasted two weeks.

strong /strɒŋ/ My father is very strong.

strongly /strɒŋli/ The house smelled strongly of incense.

struggle /stræɡ/ The peasants’ struggle against the corrupt government soon grew into a nationwide revolution.

stubborn /ˈstʌbərn/ She was very stubborn and didn’t want to study her lessons.

student /ˈstjuːdnt/ I am a student.

study /ˈstʌdɪ/ His English study is something that he enjoys.

succeed /səkˈsiːd/ If you try very hard you can succeed at whatever you do.

such /sʌf/ There is such a strong wind today.

sudden /ˈsʌdən/ All of a sudden the house fell down.

suffer /ˈsʌfər/ The sick people in the hospital are all suffering from some kind of disease.

sugar /ˈʃʊgər/ I like sugar in my tea.

summer /ˈsʌmər/ It is hot in summer.

sun /sʌn/ The sun felt hot on our backs.

Sunday /ˈsaɪndəri/ I don’t go to school on Sunday.

sunny /ˈsʌnɪ/ Today is a sunny day.

sunshine /ˈsʌnʃaɪn/ The sunshine warmed the cold winter day.

supervise /səˈpəvəz/ The teacher asked the best student to supervise the others while she was gone.

supper /ˈsʌpər/ When did you eat supper?
supply /sa'plæt/ | 1. We don’t have a large supply of books at the school.

support /sa'pɔ:t/ | 1. The son had to provide support for his mother after his father died.

suppose /sa'poʊz/ | 1. I don’t suppose you know his phone number?

suppress /sa'pres/ | 1. He had to suppress his laughter during the class.

sure /ʃʊə/ | 1. Are you sure you want to do this?

surplus /sɜː plæs/ | 1. There is a surplus of barley this year.

surprise /sa'praɪz/ | 1. His surprise was an act—it wasn’t genuine.

surrender /sa'rendə/ | 1. The enemy surrendered after one battle.

surround /sa'raʊnd/ | 1. There are flowers surrounding the tree.

survive /sa'vərv/ | 1. We weren’t sure he would survive his injury.

suspect /sa'spekt/ | 1. I suspect that he won’t be able to finish school.

suspend /sa'spend/ | 1. The kite hung suspended from its string in the tree.

swallow /swɔlɔʊ/ | He could not swallow easily.

sweater /swɛtə/ | I lost my sweater.

sweet /swi:t/ | She likes to drink sweet tea.

swim /swɪm/ | 1. Our swim in the lake lasted one hour.

sympathy /sɪmˈpæθi/ | 1. We all had a lot of sympathy for him after his mother died.

system /sɪstəm/ | Lawyers study the legal system.
table /ˈteɪbl/ | The teacher’s table is bigger than my table.  
<departure>  
take /teɪk/ | Take my brother with you when you go to the market.  
<departure>  
take care of |  
take off |  
talk /tɔːk/ | The subject of his talk was Tibetan linguistics.  
Don’t talk so much.  
tall /tɔːl/ | How tall are you?  
tank /tæŋk/ | The tank was full of water.  
tape /teɪp/ | Put some tape on the envelope.  
I need to tape this torn paper.  
target /ˈtæɡɪt/ | The arrow hit the centre of the target.  
Cigarette advertisers target young people.  
task /tæsk/ | We had many tasks to do.  
taste /teɪst/ | The taste of boiled mutton is good.  
Please taste the soup and tell me if you think that it is salty enough.  
tax /tæks/ | How much tax do you need to pay this year?  
The city will tax all retail sales beginning next year.  
television (TV, telly) /tɛlɪˈfɔːn/ | There was no electricity so we couldn’t watch television.  
television (TV, telly) /tɛlɪˈfɔːn/ | There was no electricity so we couldn’t watch television.  
telephone /ˈtelɪfəʊn/ |  
Our family has no telephone.  
Please telephone me this evening.  
television (TV, telly) /tɛlɪˈfɔːn/ | There was no electricity so we couldn’t watch television.  
tell /tɛl/ | Please tell me about yourself.  
temperature /ˈtemprətʃər/ | What is the temperature now?  
<departure>
temporary /ˈtempərəri/ | temporary /ˈtempərəri/ | The building they made was only temporary.

ten /ten/ | Here are ten pens. ten /ten/ | ten /ten/ | Here are ten pens.

tense /tens/ | She was tense before taking the test. tense /tens/ | tense /tens/ | 1. She was tense before taking the test. 2. They wrote in the past tense.

tent /tent/ | Our village has a large tent. tent /tent/ | tent /tent/ | 1. Our village has a large tent. 2. We always have a test on Friday.

term /tɜːm/ | I don’t understand some of these new terms and expressions. term /tɜːm/ | term /tɜːm/ | 1. I don’t understand some of these new terms and expressions. 2. The new term will begin soon.

terrible /ˈterəbli/ | That was a terrible storm we had yesterday. terrible /ˈterəbli/ | terrible /ˈterəbli/ | That was a terrible storm we had yesterday.

territory /ˈterətri/ | Qinghai has much grassland territory. territory /ˈterətri/ | territory /ˈterətri/ | Qinghai has much grassland territory.

terror /ˈtərər/ | She felt terror at the thought of giving a speech in front of the class. terror /ˈtərər/ | terror /ˈtərər/ | She felt terror at the thought of giving a speech in front of the class.

test /tɛst/ | We always have a test on Friday. test /tɛst/ | test /tɛst/ | We always have a test on Friday.

textile /tekˈstaɪl/ | Cotton and wool are materials used to make textiles. textile /tekˈstaɪl/ | textile /tekˈstaɪl/ | Cotton and wool are materials used to make textiles.

than /ðən; ˈdæn/ | I am taller than you. than /ðən; ˈdæn/ | than /ðən; ˈdæn/ | I am taller than you.

thank /θæŋk/ | I want to thank him for his help. thank /θæŋk/ | thank /θæŋk/ | I want to thank him for his help.

Thank goodness! | Thank goodness! I didn’t become ill. Thank goodness! | Thank goodness! | Thank goodness! I didn’t become ill.

thanks /θæŋks/ | Thanks for your help. thanks /θæŋks/ | thanks /θæŋks/ | Thanks for your help.

that /ðæt/ | What is that person doing? that /ðæt/ | that /ðæt/ | What is that person doing? That’s all right.

the Chinese /tʃaɪˈniːz/ | The Chinese have a long history. the Chinese /tʃaɪˈniːz/ | the Chinese /tʃaɪˈniːz/ | The Chinese have a long history.

the day after tomorrow | The day after tomorrow will be a holiday. the day after tomorrow | the day after tomorrow | The day after tomorrow will be a holiday.

the day before yesterday | The day before yesterday I was ill. the day before yesterday | the day before yesterday | The day before yesterday I was ill.

the middle of the day | We will eat lunch in the middle of the day. the middle of the day | the middle of the day | We will eat lunch in the middle of the day.

the next day | We will eat lunch in the next day. the next day | the next day | We will eat lunch in the next day.

the next year | The next year I became a student. the next year | the next year | The next year I became a student.

the people | The people of our village are all Tibetan. the people | the people | The people of our village are all Tibetan.

the Tibetans | The Tibetans have a beautiful and important language. the Tibetans | the Tibetans | The Tibetans have a beautiful and important language.

theatre (theater) /ˈθeɪtər/ | She wants to become an actress in the theatre. theatre (theater) /ˈθeɪtər/ | theatre (theater) /ˈθeɪtər/ | She wants to become an actress in the theatre.

their /ðeər/ | This is their classroom. their /ðeər/ | their /ðeər/ | This is their classroom.

theirs /θeəriz/ | It is theirs, not ours. theirs /θeəriz/ | theirs /θeəriz/ | It is theirs, not ours.

them /ðəm; ðəm/ | Please give it to them. them /ðəm; ðəm/ | them /ðəm; ðəm/ | Please give it to them.
themselves /ðəmˈselfz/  They did it all by themselves. นี่คือการที่เขาทำมาด้วยตัวเอง
then /ðen/  What will you do then? ฉันจะทำอะไรเมื่อคุณไป
there /ðeə/  He lives there with his family. ฉันอยู่ตรงนี้กับครอบครัว
these /ðiːz/  These girls are all good students. นี่คือพวกเธอที่ดีทั้งหมด
they /ðeɪ/  They will not give you any trouble. พวกเขาจะไม่ส่งผลกระทบต่อคุณ
thick /θɪk/  The wool on that sheep is very thick. ขนของเพ序เป็นขนหนา
thin /θɪn/  She dieted until she was quite thin. เธอดูแลตัวเองจนบางลง
thing /θɪŋ/  I don’t have a thing to wear. ฉันไม่มีอะไรให้ใส่
think /θɪŋk/  I think we must leave now. ฉันรู้สึกว่าเราควรจะออกไป
third /θɜːd/  This is the third time I’ve told you to stop that. นี่คือครั้งที่สามที่ฉันบอกให้คุณหยุด
thirteen /ˈθɜː tn/  She was thirteen before she went to the big city. เธอมีอายุยี่สิบสามก่อนที่จะไปเมืองใหญ่
thirty /ˈθɜː tɪ/  My mother is thirty years old. นี่คือสามสิบปีของเธอ
this /ðɪs/  This is a big yak. นี่คือยักษ์ใหญ่
those /ðəʊz/  Those are an old pair of socks. นี่คือถุงเท้าคู่เก่า
threat /θret/  Your threats don’t frighten me. คุณจะไม่สามารถตerrorsme
three /θriː/  There are three girls in our family. นี่คือสามคนในครอบครัว
through /θruː/  I like watching the horses run through the grass. ฉันชอบดูม้าวิ่งผ่านหญ้า
throw /θruː/  Throw me the ball. ทิ้งให้ฉันจับบอล
Thursday /ˈθɜː zdeɪ/  On Thursday we will have a picnic. วันพฤหัสบดีนี้ปลั๊กไปปิคนิค
Tibetan /ˌtɪ betən/  Do you speak Tibetan? คุณพูดภาษาเทเบตไม่ใช่ใช่
ticket /ˈtɪk tɪ/  Can you buy me a bus ticket? คุณสามารถซื้อตั๋ววันนี้ได้ใช่ใช่
tidy /taɪdi/  She always keeps her room tidy. เธอจะจัดห้องอยู่เสมอ

tiger /ˈtaɪɡər/  Have you ever seen a tiger? คุณเคยเห็นแมวที่นี่หรือไม่
time /tAIM/  What time is our English class? เวลาเรียนภาษาอังกฤษคือเวลาเท่าไร
tired /ˈtaɪəd/  He was tired after studying for many hours. เขาไปนอนหลับหลังจากการเรียนหนัก

to /tɔː, tuː/  I’m going to go to the market. ฉันจะไปเข้าตลาด

today /ˈtə deɪ/  Today I want to tell you all a story. วันนี้ฉันจะเล่าเรื่องให้คุณฟัง

together /təˈgreðə/  We ate a delicious dinner together. เรารับประทานอาหารค่ำด้วยกัน

toilet /təˈloʊt/  The toilet stopped working last night. กับตัวที่ฉีดข้าว

tomorrow /təˈmɔrəʊ/  明天 I’m leaving on a long trip. ฉันจะออกไปเที่ยวนาน

tonight /təˈnɔrt/  Tonight he thought it would rain. คืนนี้เขาคิดว่ามันจะตกชี

too /tjuː/  Do you want to read a book, too? คุณต้องการจะอ่านหนังสือเพิ่มอีกใช่ใช่

•260•
tool /tu:l/  
A hammer is a useful tool.

tooth /tu:θ/  
The baby is growing a new tooth.

top /tɒp/  
Put the book on top of the table.

torture /təːtʃə/  
Trying to read a book in the dark is torture for the eyes.

total /ˈtɔːtəl/  
Can you total these numbers for me?

touch /tʌtʃ/  
He was so fat that he couldn’t touch his toes.

toward /təˈwɔːrd/  
We walked toward the village.

town /təʊn/  
Are you going to town today?

township /ˈtoʊnʃɪp/  
My home is in Maba Township.

trade / treɪd/  
The computer trade in China is growing.

traffic jam /træfɪk  dʒæm/  
There was a traffic jam so I’m late.

traffic /ˈtræfɪk/  
Late at night there is little traffic.

tradition /trəˈdɪʃən/  
Singing loudly is a tradition in this area.

transport /trænspɔːt/  
That big truck is used to transport goods to the market.

travel /ˈtrævl/  
Travel by ship is slower than travel by plane.

treasure /ˈtreʒər/  
They hoped to find a treasure in the cave.

treat /trɪt/  
I’ll treat you to a nice meal at noon in a restaurant.

treaty /ˈtriːti/  
The two countries ended the war by signing a treaty.

tree /tri/  
The tree was cut down.

trial /ˈtreɪl/  
The murder trial lasted only two days.
We don’t have enough money for the trip. I hope we don’t have any trouble on the way. I’ve bought some new trousers. The armies declared a truce. I hope we don’t have any trouble on the way. I’ve bought some new trousers. The armies declared a truce. I swear it is a true story.

The trust that I have in your ability explains why I am promoting you. I’m not sure that person can be trusted. Although it was a good try it was unsuccessful. She will try to come to see you in the hospital.

The scientists study the elements in the universe. We should all unite for equal rights. My English teacher is from the USA. He passed the entrance exam and will go to a university.

I don’t want you to come unless you will be happy. Tibetan is unlike English. That is an unusual rock.
up /ʌp/ | Let’s go up the mountain.

up and down | His hand moved up and down.

urgent /ˈɜːdʒənt/ | This is an urgent message for your teacher.

us /ʌs/ | Please tell us the answer.

use /juːz/ | Please use my pencil.

usually /ˈjuːlɪli/ | I usually have bread for breakfast.

valley /ˈvælə/ | There is a large valley between those two mountains.

value /ˈvæljuː/ | With inflation the value of money is reduced.

vegetable /ˈvedʒtəbl/ | This vegetable is my favourite.

vehicle /ˈvɪkl/ | Have you seen our new vehicle on the road?

version /ˈvɜːʒən/ | This is the best version of the poem I’ve ever read.

very much | I don’t like to eat beef very much.

very /ˈveri/ | She is very tall.

veto /ˈvetoʊ/ | The President chose to veto the new law.

vicious /ˈvɪʃəs/ | That is a vicious dog barking over there.

victory /ˈvɪktəri/ | The players were celebrating their recent victory.

village /ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ | My village is behind the mountain.

violence /ˈvɪələns/ | It would be awful to have violence in the classroom.

virus /ˈvaɪrəs/ | The virus was spread through water.

visit /ˈvɪzɪt/ | My mother left for her own home yesterday after a three-day visit to my home.

visitor /ˈvɪzɪtər/ | The visitor left after two hours.

voice /ˈvoʊs/ | Her voice sounded strange on the phone.

volcano /ˈvɒlkənəʊ/ | There are volcanoes erupting in Hawaii.

volleyball /ˈvɒliˌbɔːl/ | The new volleyball was expensive.
vote /vəʊt/ 1. How many votes did each candidate receive?
vote /vəʊt/ 2. At what age do you get to vote in the election?

voyage /ˈvoɪdʒ/ 1. My mother arrived after a long voyage over the ocean.

W

wait for /wet/ 1. Please wait for me by the school.

walk /wɔːk/ 1. After a long walk in the mountains I felt much better.
2. I’ll walk to your home this evening.

warm /wɔːm/ 1. Today is warm.
2. There is a great deal of wealth in that part of town.

way /weɪ/ 1. This way please!
2. The party is on Wednesday.

Wednesday /ˈwenzdeI; -di/ 1. The party is on Wednesday.
One week from today is her birthday.

Monday is a weekday.

Saturday and Sunday are the weekend.

Welcome to my home!

My home is west of here.

My shirt is wet from the rain.

What did you learn in class today?

What about next week?

What about the new teacher?

China grows a lot of wheat.

The wheel was invented a long time ago.

When she left she was sad.

When will you visit me again?

Where are you going?

Which colour do you like best?

While she was out a friend came to visit.

I ate the whole dish of food.

Whose book is this?

I hope to become wise when I grow older.

She wished she could go to the university.

I’ll come with you.

I’ll need to withdraw some money from the bank tomorrow.
without /wɪˈðaʊt/  With my friends, I’d be quite lonely.  
woman /ˈwʊmən/  That woman is Tibetan.  
women /ˈwɪmən/  Those women are Tibetan.  

wonder /ˈwʌndər/  I wonder what they will be doing next week?  

wood /wʊd/  Can you help me collect some wood?  
word /wɜːd/  How do you pronounce this word?  
work /wɜːk/  I don’t like my work.  
worker /ˈwɜːkər/  My father is a worker.  

world /wɜːld/  I’d rather live here than anywhere else in the whole world.  

worry /ˈvʌri/  Don’t worry!  
worse /wɜːst/  If I don’t study my English becomes worse and worse.  

wound /wʊnd/  She got a serious wound when she fell off her horse.  

write /raɪt/  Will you write a letter to me very soon?  
wrong /rɒŋ/  What’s wrong with your sister?  

X-ray /ɛks ˈrɛɪ/  I had an x-ray yesterday.  

year /jɪər/  In what year were your born?  
yellow /ˈjɛləʊ/  Butter is yellow.  
yes /jɛs/  Yes, I am Tibetan.  
yesterday /ˈjestədɪ/  I forgot what I said yesterday.  
yesterday evening /ˈjestədɪ ˈɛvənɪŋ/  Yesterday evening I went to visit my uncle.  

yet /jet/  I haven’t been to class yet.  

you /juː/  Do you want to learn English?  
young /jʌŋ/  I’m not young anymore.  
your /jɔːr/  Your dress is beautiful.  
yours /jɔːz/  Is this book yours?
Did you paint this picture by yourself?

Zero is a number.